Pathwise functional calculus and applications to continuous-time finance
Candia Riga

To cite this version:

HAL Id: tel-02003233
https://theses.hal.science/tel-02003233
Submitted on 1 Feb 2019

HAL is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L’archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire HAL, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d’enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.
Calcul fonctionnel non-anticipatif
et applications en finance
Pathwise functional calculus
and applications to continuous-time finance

Par Candia Riga
Thèse de doctorat de Mathématiques
Tesi di perfezionamento in Matematica per la Finanza

Dirigée par Rama Cont et Sara Biagini

Rapporteurs: Föllmer Hans et Crépey Stéphane

Présentée et soutenue le 26/06/2015, devant un jury composé de:

Cont Rama         Université Pierre et Marie Curie         Directeur
Tankov Peter      Université Denis Diderot               Examinateur
Crépey Stéphane   Université d’Evry                    Rapporteur
Biagini Sara       Università di Pisa                    Co-Directeur
Ambrosio Luigi    Scuola Normale Superiore di Pisa       Examinateur
Marmi Stefano     Scuola Normale Superiore di Pisa       Examinateur
Abstract

This thesis develops a mathematical framework for the analysis of continuous-time trading strategies which, in contrast to the classical setting of continuous-time finance, does not rely on stochastic integrals or other probabilistic notions.

Using the recently developed ‘non-anticipative functional calculus’, we first develop a pathwise definition of the gain process for a large class of continuous-time trading strategies which include the important class of delta-hedging strategies, as well as a pathwise definition of the self-financing condition.

Using these concepts, we propose a framework for analyzing the performance and robustness of delta-hedging strategies for path-dependent derivatives across a given set of scenarios. Our setting allows for general path-dependent payoffs and does not require any probabilistic assumption on the dynamics of the underlying asset, thereby extending previous results on robustness of hedging strategies in the setting of diffusion models. We obtain a pathwise formula for the hedging error for a general path-dependent derivative and provide sufficient conditions ensuring the robustness of the delta hedge. We show in particular that robust hedges may be obtained in a large class of continuous exponential martingale models under a vertical convexity condition on the payoff functional. Under the same conditions, we show that discontinuities in the underlying asset always deteriorate the hedging performance. These results are applied to the case of Asian options and barrier options.
The last chapter, independent of the rest of the thesis, proposes a novel method, jointly developed with Andrea Pascucci and Stefano Pagliarani, for analytical approximations in local volatility models with Lévy jumps. The main result is an expansion of the characteristic function in a local Lévy model, which is worked out in the Fourier space by considering the adjoint formulation of the pricing problem. Combined with standard Fourier methods, our result provides efficient and accurate pricing formulae. In the case of Gaussian jumps, we also derive an explicit approximation of the transition density of the underlying process by a heat kernel expansion; the approximation is obtained in two ways: using PIDE techniques and working in the Fourier space. Numerical tests confirm the effectiveness of the method.
Sommario

Questa tesi sviluppa un approccio ‘per traiettorie’ alla modellizzazione dei mercati finanziari in tempo continuo, senza fare ricorso a delle ipotesi probabilistiche o a dei modelli stocastici. Lo strumento principale utilizzato in questa tesi è il calcolo funzionale non-anticipativo, una teoria analitica che sostituisce il calcolo stocastico solitamente utilizzato in finanza matematica.

Cominciamo nel Capitolo 1 introducendo la teoria di base del calcolo funzionale non-anticipativo e i suoi principali risultati che utilizzeremo nel corso della tesi. Il Capitolo 2 mostra in dettaglio la versione probabilistica di tale calcolo, soprannominata Calcolo di Itô funzionale, e mostra come essa permetta di estendere i risultati classici sulla valutazione e la replicazione dei derivati finanziari al caso di opzioni dipendenti dalla traiettoria dei prezzi. Inoltre illustriamo la relazione tra le equazioni alle derivate parziali con coefficienti dipendenti dal cammino e le equazioni differenziali stocastiche ‘backward’. Infine prendiamo in considerazione altre nozioni deboli di soluzione a tali equazioni alle derivate parziali dipendenti dal cammino, utilizzate nella letteratura nel caso in cui non esistano soluzioni classiche.

In seguito, nel Capitolo 3, costruiamo un modello di mercato finanziario in tempo continuo, senza ipotesi probabilistiche e con un orizzonte temporale finito, dove i tempi di transazione sono rappresentati da una sequenza crescente di partizioni temporali, il cui passo converge a 0. Identifichiamo le traiettorie ‘plausibili’ con quelle che possiedono una variazione quadratica finita, nel senso di Föllmer, lungo tale sequenza di partizioni. Tale condizione di plausibilità sull’insieme dei cammini ammissibili rispetta il punto di vista
delle condizioni ‘per traiettorie’ di non-arbitraggio.

Completiamo il quadro introducendo una nozione ‘per traiettorie’ di strategie auto-finanzianti su un insieme di traiettorie di prezzi. Queste strategie sono definite come limite di strategie semplici e auto-finanzianti, i cui tempi di transizione appartengono alla sequenza di partizioni temporali fissata. Identifichiamo una classe speciale di strategie di trading che dimostriamo essere auto-finanzianti e il cui guadagno può essere calcolato traiettoria per traiettoria come limite di somme di Riemann. Inoltre, presentiamo un risultato di replicazione per traiettorie e una formula analitica esplicita per stimare l’errore di replicazione. Infine, definiamo una famiglia di operatori integrali indicizzati sui cammini come delle isometrie tra spazi normati completi.

Il Capitolo 4 utilizza questo quadro teorico per proporre un’analisi per traiettorie delle strategie di replicazione dinamica. Ci interessiamo in particolare alla robustezza della loro performance nel caso della replicazione di derivati dipendenti dalla traiettoria dei prezzi e monitorati in tempo continuo. Supponiamo che l’agente di mercato utilizzi un modello di martingala esponenziale di quadrato integrabile per calcolare il prezzo e il portafoglio di replicazione; analizziamo quindi la performance della strategia di delta-hedging quando viene applicata alla traiettoria realizzata dei prezzi del sottostante piuttosto che a una dinamica stocastica.

Innanzitutto, consideriamo il caso in cui disponiamo di un funzionale di prezzo regolare e mostriamo che la replicazione tramite delta-hedging è robusta se la derivata verticale seconda del funzionale di prezzo ha lo stesso segno della differenza tra la volatilità del modello e la volatilità realizzata dei prezzi di mercato. Otteniamo così una formula esplicita per l’errore di replicazione data una traiettoria. Questa formula è l’analogo per traiettorie del risultato ottenuto da EL Karoui et al (1997) e la generalizza al caso dipendente dalla traiettoria, senza ricorrere a delle ipotesi probabilistiche o alla proprietà di Markov circa la dinamica reale dei prezzi di mercati. Presentiamo infine delle codizioni sufficienti affinché il funzionale di valutazione abbia la regolarità richiesta per tali risultati sullo spazio dei cammini con-
Questi risultati permettono di analizzare la robustezza delle strategie di replicazione dinamica. Forniamo una condizione sufficiente sul funzionale di payoff che assicura la positività della derivata verticale seconda del funzionale di prezzo, ovvero la convessità di una certa funzione reale. Analizziamo ugualmente il contributo di salti della traiettoria dei prezzi all’errore di replicazione ottenuto agendo sul mercato secondo la strategia di delta-hedging. Osserviamo che le discontinuità deteriorano la performance della replicazione. Nel caso speciale di un modello Black-Scholes generalizzato utilizzato dall’agente, se il derivato venduto ha un payoff monitorato a tempo discreto, allora il funzionale di prezzo è localmente regolare su tutto lo spazio dei cammini continui stoppati e le sue derivate, verticale e orizzontale, sono date in forma esplicita. Consideriamo anche il caso di un modello con volatilità dipendente dalla traiettoria dei prezzi, il modello Hobson-Rogers, e mostriamo come il problema di pricing sia anche in quel caso riconducibile all’equazione di pricing universale introdotta nel secondo capitolo. Infine, mostriamo qualche esempio di applicazione della nostra analisi, precisamente la replicazione di opzioni asiatiche e barrier.

L’ultimo capitolo è uno studio indipendente dal resto della tesi, sviluppato insieme ad Andrea Pascucci e Stefano Pagliarani, in cui proponiamo un nuovo metodo di approssimazione analitica in modelli a volatilità locale con salti di tipo Lévy. Il risultato principale è un’espansione in serie della funzione caratteristica in un modello di Lévy locale, ottenuta nello spazio di Fourier considerando la formulazione aggiunta del problema di ‘pricing’. Congiuntamente ai metodi di Fourier standard, il nostro risultato fornisce formule di ‘pricing’ efficienti e accurate. Nel caso di salti gaussiani, deriviamo anche un’approssimazione esplicita della densità di transizione del processo sottostante tramite un’espansione con nucleo del calore; tale approssimazione è ottenuta in due modi: usando tecniche PIDE e lavorando nello spazio di Fourier. Test numerici confermano l’efficacità del metodo.
Sommario
Résumé

Cette thèse développe une approche trajectorielle pour la modélisation des marchés financiers en temps continu, sans faire appel à des hypothèses probabilistes ou à des modèles stochastiques. L’outil principal utilisé dans cette thèse est le calcul fonctionnel non-anticipatif, un cadre analytique qui remplace le calcul stochastique habituellement utilisé en finance mathématique.

Nous commençons dans le Chapitre 1 par introduire la théorie de base du calcul fonctionnel non-anticipatif et ses principaux résultats que nous utilisons tout au long de la thèse. Le Chapitre 2 détaille la contrepartie probabiliste de ce calcul, le Calcul d’Ito fonctionnel, et montre comment ce calcul permet d’étendre les résultats classiques sur l’évaluation et la couverture des produits dérivés au cas des options avec une dépendance trajectorielle. Par ailleurs, nous décrivons la relation entre les équations aux dérivées partielles avec coefficients dépendant du chemin et les équations différentielles stochastiques ‘backward’. Finalement, nous considérons d’autres notions plus faibles de solution à ces équations aux dérivées partielles avec coefficients dépendant du chemin, lesquelles sont utilisées dans la littérature au cas où des solutions classiques n’existent pas.

Ensuite nous mettons en place, dans le Chapitre 3, un modèle de marché financier en temps continu, sans hypothèses probabilistes et avec un horizon fini où les temps de transactions sont représentés par une suite emboîtée de partitions dont le pas converge vers 0. Nous proposons une condition de plausibilité sur l’ensemble des chemins admissibles du point de vue des conditions trajectorielles de non-arbitrage. Les trajectoires ‘plausibles’ sont
révélées avoir une variation quadratique finie, au sens de Föllmer, le long de cette suite de partitions.

Nous complétons le cadre en introduisant une notion trajectorielle de stratégie auto-financante sur un ensemble de trajectoires de prix. Ces stratégies sont définies comme des limites de stratégies simples et auto-financantes, dont les temps de transactions appartiennent à la suite de partitions temporelles fixée. Nous identifions une classe spéciale de stratégies de trading que nous prouvons être auto-financantes et dont le gain peut être calculé trajectoire par trajectoire comme limite de sommes de Riemann. Par ailleurs, nous présentons un résultat de réplication trajectorielle et une formule analytique explicite pour estimer l’erreur de couverture. Finalement nous définissons une famille d’opérateurs intégraux trajectoriels (indexés par les chemins) comme des isométries entre des espaces normés complets.

Le Chapitre 4 emploie ce cadre théorique pour proposer une analyse trajectorielle des stratégies de couverture dynamique. Nous nous intéressons en particulier à la robustesse de leur performance dans la couverture de produits dérivés path-dependent monitorés en temps continu. Nous supposons que l’agent utilise un modèle de martingale exponentielle de carré intégrable pour calculer les prix et les portefeuilles de couverture, et nous analysons la performance de la stratégie delta-neutre lorsqu’elle est appliquée à la trajectoire du prix sous-jacent réalisé plutôt qu’à une dynamique stochastique. D’abord nous considérons le cas où nous disposons d’une fonctionnelle de prix régulière et nous montrons que la couverture delta-neutre est robuste si la dérivée verticale seconde de la fonctionnelle de prix est du même signe que la différence entre la volatilité du modèle et la volatilité réalisée du marché, et nous obtenons une formule explicite pour l’erreur de couverture sur une trajectoire donnée. Cette formule est l’analogue trajectoriel du résultat de El Karoui et al (1997) et le généralise au cas path-dependent, sans faire appel à des hypothèses probabilistes ou à la propriété de Markov. Enfin nous présentons des conditions suffisantes pour que la fonctionnelle d’évaluation ait la régularité requise pour ces résultats sur l’espace des chemins continus.
Ces résultats permettent d’analyser la robustesse des stratégies de couverture dynamiques. Nous fournissons une condition suffisante sur la fonctionnelle de payoff qui assure la positivité de la dérivée verticale seconde de la fonctionnelle d’évaluation, i.e. la convexité d’une certaine fonction réelle. Nous analysons également la contribution des sauts de la trajectoire des prix à l’erreur de couverture obtenue en échangeant sur le marché selon la stratégie delta-neutre. Nous remarquons que les discontinuités détériorent la performance de la couverture. Dans le cas spécial d’un modèle Black-Scholes généralisé utilisé par l’agent, si le produit dérivé vendu a un payoff monitoré en temps discret, alors la fonctionnelle de prix est localement régulière sur tout l’espace des chemins continus arrêtés et ses dérivées verticale et horizontale sont données dans une forme explicite. Nous considérons aussi le cas d’un modèle avec volatilité dépendant de la trajectoire des prix, le modèle Hobsons-Rogers, et nous montrons comment le problème de ‘pricing’ puisse encore être réduit à l’équation universelle introduite dans le Chapitre 2. Finalement, nous montrons quelques applications de notre analyse, notamment la couverture des options Asiatiques et barrières.

Le dernier chapitre, indépendante du reste de la thèse, est une étude en collaboration avec Andrea Pascucci and Stefano Pagliarani, où nous proposons une nouvelle méthode pour l’approximation analytique dans des modèles à volatilité locale avec des sauts de type Lévy. Le résultat principal est un développement asymptotique de la fonction caractéristique dans un modèle de Lévy locale, qui est obtenue dans l’espace de Fourier en considérant la formulation adjointe du problème de ‘pricing’. Associé aux méthodes de Fourier standard, notre résultat fournit des approximations précises pour le prix. Dans le cas de sauts gaussiens, nous dérivons aussi une approximation explicite de la densité de transition du processus sous-jacent à travers d’une expansion avec noyau de la chaleur; cette approximation est obtenue dans deux façons: en utilisant des techniques PIDE et en travaillant dans l’espace de Fourier. Des tests numériques confirment l’efficacité de la méthode.
Acknowledgments

First, I do have to thank my advisor Professor Rama Cont for giving me the valuable opportunity to be under his guidance and to join the team at the Laboratoire de Probabilité et modèles aléatoires in Paris, for sharing with me his precious insights, and for encouraging my continuation in the academic research. He also taught me to have a more independent attitude to research. I would also like to thank my co-supervisor Professor Sara Biagini for her patient and precious support at the beginning of my research project in Pisa.

I really thank Professors Stefano Marmi, Fabrizio Lillo and Mariano Gi-aquinta for awarding me the PhD fellowship at the Scuola Normale Superiore in Pisa, and Stefano for his helpfulness as my tutor and for the financial support. I am very thankful to Professors Franco Flandoli and Maurizio Pratelli who welcomed me at my arrival in Pisa, let me join their seminars at the department of Mathematics, and were always available for helpful discussions and advises.

I am very thankful to my master thesis advisor, Professor Andrea Pas-cucci, for guiding me into research, for his sincere advises and his constant availability. I thank as well Professor Pierluigi Contucci for his helpful encouragement and his collaboration, and Professors Paolo Foschi and Hykel Hosni for inviting me to present my research at the workshops organized respectively at Imperial College of London and at Centro di Ricerca Matem-atica Ennio De Giorgi in Pisa.

I would like to thank all my colleagues and friends that shared these three years of PhD with me in Pisa, Paris and Cambridge, especially Adam,
Giacomo, Laura A., Alessandro, Olga, Fernando, Pierre-Louis, Eric A., Nina, Alice and Tibault. I especially thank Professor Rama Cont’s other PhD students, for their friendship and reciprocal support: Yi, Eric S., Laura S. and Anna.

I thank all the administrative teams in Pisa and Paris and at the *Newton Institute for Mathematical Sciences* in Cambridge (UK), for being always very helpful. I also thank the French Embassy in Rome for financing my staying in Paris and the *Isaac Newton Institute* for financing my staying in Cambridge.

I am grateful to Professors Ashkan Nikeghbali and Jean-Charles Rochet for inviting me at the University of Zurich and for their interest and trust in my research. I also thank Delia for her friendship and encouragement since my arrival in Zurich.

I am very grateful to Professors Hans Föllmer and Stéphane Crépey for accepting to be referees for this thesis, for helpful comments, and for the very nice and supporting reports. I would like to thank as well Professors Luigi Ambrosio and Peter Tankov for agreeing to be examiners for my defense.

Last but not least, I am infinitely thankful to my parents who have always supported me, my brother Kelvin for making me stronger, and my significant other Thomas for his love and for always inciting me to follow the right path for my studies even when this implied a long distance between us.
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notation</strong></td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Pathwise calculus for non-anticipative functionals</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Quadratic variation along a sequence of partitions</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 Relation with the other notions of quadratic variation</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Non-anticipative functionals</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Change of variable formulae for functionals</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Functional Itô Calculus</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Functional Itô formulae</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Weak functional calculus and martingale representation</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Functional Kolmogorov equations</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1 Universal pricing and hedging equations</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Path-dependent PDEs and BSDEs</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.1 Weak and viscosity solutions of path-dependent PDEs</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 A pathwise approach to continuous-time trading</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Pathwise integration and model-free arbitrage</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Pathwise construction of stochastic integrals</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2 Model-free arbitrage strategies</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 The setting</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 A plausibility requirement</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3 Self-financing strategies .................................................. 78
3.4 Pathwise construction of the gain process .......................... 80
3.5 Pathwise replication of contingent claims ........................... 85
3.6 Pathwise isometries and extension of the pathwise integral .... 87

4 Pathwise Analysis of dynamic hedging strategies ................. 91
4.1 Robustness of hedging under model uncertainty: a survey ...... 93
  4.1.1 Hedging under uncertain volatility ................................. 93
  4.1.2 Robust hedging of discretely monitored options ............... 106
4.2 Robustness and the hedging error formula ......................... 109
4.3 The impact of jumps ....................................................... 115
4.4 Regularity of pricing functionals ...................................... 116
4.5 Vertical convexity as a condition for robustness .................. 123
4.6 A model with path-dependent volatility: Hobson-Rogers ....... 124
4.7 Examples ........................................................................ 126
  4.7.1 Discretely-monitored path-dependent derivatives .......... 127
  4.7.2 Robust hedging for Asian options ................................. 129
  4.7.3 Dynamic hedging of barrier options ............................... 135

5 Adjoint expansions in local Lévy models ............................. 137
5.1 General framework .......................................................... 138
5.2 LV models with Gaussian jumps ....................................... 143
  5.2.1 Simplified Fourier approach for LV models ................. 150
5.3 Local Lévy models .......................................................... 154
  5.3.1 High order approximations ....................................... 161
5.4 Numerical tests .............................................................. 163
  5.4.1 Tests under CEV-Merton dynamics ............................. 164
  5.4.2 Tests under CEV-Variance-Gamma dynamics ............... 165
5.5 Appendix: proof of Theorem 5.3 ....................................... 166

Bibliography ...................................................................... 177
Notation

Acronyms and abbreviations

càdlàg  = right continuous with left limits  
càglàd  = left continuous with right limits  
SDE    = stochastic differential equation  
BSDE   = backward stochastic differential equation  
PDE    = partial differential equation  
FPDE   = functional partial differential equation  
PPDE   = path-dependent partial differential equation  
EMM    = equivalent martingale measure  
NA     = no-arbitrage condition  
NA1    = “no arbitrage of the first kind” condition  
NFL    = “no free lunch” condition  
NFLVR  = “no free lunch with vanishing risk” condition  
s.t.   = such that  
a.s.   = almost surely  
a.e.   = almost everywhere
e.g. = exempli gratia \equiv example given

i.e. = id est \equiv that is

**Basic mathematical notation**

$\mathbb{R}_+^d = \text{positive orthant in } \mathbb{R}^d$

$D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d) \ (\text{resp. } D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+^d)) = \text{space of càdlàg functions from } [0, T]$

$\text{ to } \mathbb{R}^d \ (\text{respectively } \mathbb{R}_+^d), \ d \in \mathbb{N}$

$C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+^d) \ (\text{resp. } C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+^d)) = \text{space of continuous functions from } [0, T]$

$\text{ to } \mathbb{R}^d \ (\text{respectively } \mathbb{R}_+^d), \ d \in \mathbb{N}$

$\mathcal{S}_+^d = \text{set of symmetric positive-definite } d \times d \text{ matrices}$

$\mathcal{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0, T]} = \text{natural filtration generated by the coordinate process}$

$\mathcal{F}^X = (\mathcal{F}_t^X)_{t \in [0, T]} = \text{natural filtration generated by a stochastic process } X$

$\mathbb{E}^P = \text{expectation under the probability measure } \mathbb{P}$

$\overset{\text{P}}{\longrightarrow} = \text{limit in probability } \mathbb{P}$

$\overset{\text{ucp}(\mathbb{P})}{\longrightarrow} = \text{limit in the topology defined by uniform convergence on compacts}$

$\cdot = \text{scalar product in } \mathbb{R}^d \ (\text{unless differently specified})$

$\langle \cdot \rangle = \text{Frobenius inner product in } \mathbb{R}^{d \times d} \ (\text{unless differently specified})$

$\| \cdot \|_\infty = \text{sup norm in spaces of paths, e.g. in } D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \ C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \ D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+^d), \ C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+^d), \ldots$

$\| \cdot \|_p = L^p\text{-norm, } 1 \leq p \leq \infty$

$[\cdot] (\cdot, \cdot) = \text{quadratic (co-)variation process}$

$\bullet = \text{stochastic integral operator}$
tr = trace operator, i.e. \( \text{tr}(A) = \sum_{i=1}^{d} A_{i,i} \) where \( A \in \mathbb{R}^{d \times d} \).

\( A^t \) = transpose of a matrix \( A \)

\( x(t-) \) = left limit of \( x \) at \( t \), i.e. \( \lim_{s \nearrow t} x(s) \)

\( x(t+) \) = right limit of \( x \) at \( t \), i.e. \( \lim_{s \searrow t} x(s) \)

\( \Delta x(t) \equiv \Delta^- x(t) = \) left-side jump of \( x \) at \( t \), i.e. \( x(t) - x(t-) \)

\( \Delta^+ x(t) = \) right-side jump of \( x \) at \( t \), i.e. \( x(t+) - x(t) \)

\( \partial_x = \partial x \)

\( \partial_{xy} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} \)

**Functional notation**

\( x(t) \) = value of \( x \) at time \( t \), e.g. \( x(t) \in \mathbb{R}^d \) if \( x \in D([0,T], \mathbb{R}^d) \);

\( x_t = x(t \wedge \cdot) \in D([0,T], \mathbb{R}^d) \) the path of \( x \) ‘stopped’ at the time \( t \);

\( x_{t-} = x \mathbb{1}_{[0,t)} + x(t-) \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]} \in D([0,T], \mathbb{R}^d) \);

\( x^\delta_t = x_t + \delta \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]} \in D([0,T], \mathbb{R}^d) \) the *vertical perturbation* – of size and direction given by the vector \( \delta \in \mathbb{R}^d \) – of the path of \( x \) stopped at \( t \) over the future time interval \([t,T]\);

\( \Lambda_T \) = space of (càdlàg) stopped paths

\( \mathcal{W}_T \) = subspace of \( \Lambda_T \) of continuous stopped paths

\( d_{\infty} \) = distance introduced on the space of stopped paths

\( \mathcal{D}F \) = horizontal derivative of a non-anticipative functional \( F \)

\( \nabla_0 F \) = vertical derivative of a non-anticipative functional \( F \)

\( \nabla_X \) = vertical derivative operator defined on the space of square-integrable \( \mathcal{F}^X \)-martingales
Introduction

The mathematical modeling of financial markets dates back to 1900, with the doctoral thesis [5] of Louis Bachelier, who first introduced the Brownian motion as a model for the price fluctuation of a liquid traded financial asset. After a long break, in the mid-sixties, Samuelson [94] revived Bachelier’s intuition by proposing the use of geometric Brownian motion which, as well as stock prices, remains positive. This became soon a reference financial model, thanks to Black and Scholes [12] and Merton [74], who derived closed formulas for the price of call options under this setting, later named the “Black-Scholes model”, and introduced the novelty of linking the option pricing issue with hedging. The seminal paper by Harrison and Pliska [55] linked the theory of continuous-time trading to the theory of stochastic integrals, which has been used ever since as the standard setting in Mathematical Finance.

Since then, advanced stochastic tools have been used to describe the price dynamics of financial assets and its interplay with the pricing and hedging of financial derivatives contingent on the trajectory of the same assets. The common framework has been to model the financial market as a filtered probability space \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, (\mathcal{F}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}, \mathbb{P})\) under which the prices of liquid traded assets are represented by stochastic processes \(X = (X_t)_{t \geq 0}\) and the payoffs of derivatives as functionals of the underlying price process. The probability measure \(\mathbb{P}\), also called real world, historical, physical or objective probability tries to capture the observed patterns and, in the equilibrium interpretation, represents the (subjective) expectation of the “representative investor”. The objective probability must satisfy certain constraints of market efficiency,
the strongest form of which requires $X$ to be a $(\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0,T]}$-martingale under $\mathbb{P}$. However, usually, weaker forms of market efficiency are assumed by no-arbitrage considerations, which translate, by the several versions of the Fundamental Theorem of Asset Pricing (see [95, 96] and references therein), to the existence of an equivalent martingale (or risk-neutral) measure $\mathbb{Q}$, that can be interpreted as the expectation of a “risk-neutral investor” as well as a consistent price system describing the market consensus. The first result in this stream of literature (concerning continuous-time financial models) is found in Ross [93] in 1978, where the no-arbitrage condition (NA) is formalized, then major advances came in 1979 by Harrison and Kreps [54] and in 1981 by Harrison and Pliska [55] and in particular by Kreps [66], who introduced the no free lunch condition (NFL), proven to be equivalent to the existence of a local martingale measure. More general versions of the Fundamental Theorem of Asset Pricing are due to Delbaen and Schachermayer [31, 30], whose most general statement pertains to a general multi-dimensional semimartingale model and establishes the equivalence between the condition of no free lunch with vanishing risk (NFLVR) and the existence of a sigma-martingale measure. The model assumption that the price process behaves as a semimartingale comes from the theory of stochastic analysis, since it is known that there is a good integration theory for a stochastic process $X$ if and only if it is a semimartingale. At the same time, such assumption is also in agreement with the financial reasoning, as it is shown in [31] that a very weak form of no free lunch condition, assuring also the existence of an equivalent local martingale measure, is enough to imply that if $X$ is locally bounded then it must be a semimartingale under the objective measure $\mathbb{P}$. In [32] the authors present in a “guided tour” all important results pertaining to this theme.

The choice of an objective probability measure is not obvious and always encompasses a certain amount of model risk and model ambiguity. Recently, there has been a growing emphasis on the dangerous consequences of relying on a specific probabilistic model. The concept of the so-called Knightian
uncertainty, introduced way back in 1921 by Frank Knight \cite{65}, while distin-
guishing between “risk” and “uncertainty”, is still as relevant today and
led to a new challenging research area in Mathematical Finance. More funda-
mentally, the existence of a single objective probability does not even make
sense, agreeing with the criticism raised by de Finetti \cite{28, 29}.

After the booming experienced in the seventies and eighties, in the late
eighties the continuous-time modeling of financial markets evoked new in-
terpretations that can more faithfully represent the economic reality. In the
growing flow of literature addressing the issue of model ambiguity, we may
recognize two approaches:

- **model-independent**, where the single probability measure $P$ is re-
  placed by a family $\mathcal{P}$ of plausible probability measures;

- **model-free**, that eliminates probabilistic a priori assumptions alto-
  gether, and relies instead on pathwise statements.

The first versions of the Fundamental Theorem of Asset Pricing under
model ambiguity are presented in \cite{13, 14, 2} in discrete time, and \cite{9} in
continuous time, using a model-independent approach.

The model-free approach to effectively deal with the issue of model ambi-
guity also provides a solution to another problem affecting the classical prob-
abilistic modeling of financial markets. Indeed, in continuous-time financial
models, the gain process of a self-financing trading strategy is represented as
a stochastic integral. However, despite the elegance of the probabilistic rep-
resentation, some real concerns arise. Beside the issue of the impossible con-
sensus on a probability measure, the representation of the gain from trading
lacks a pathwise meaning: while being a limit in probability of approximat-
ing Riemann sums, the stochastic integral does not have a well-defined value
on a given ‘state of the world’. This causes a gap in the use of probabilistic
models, in the sense that it is not possible to compute the gain of a trading
portfolio given the realized trajectory of the underlying asset price, which
constitutes a drawback in terms of interpretation.
Beginning in the nineties, a new branch of the literature has addressed the issue of pathwise integration in the context of financial mathematics.

The approach of this thesis is probability-free. In the first part, we will set up a framework for continuous-time trading where everything has a pathwise characterization. This purely analytical structure allows us to effectively deal with the issue of model ambiguity (or Knightian uncertainty) and the lack of a path-by-path computation of the gain of trading strategies.

A breakthrough in this direction was the seminal paper written by Föllmer in 1981. He proved a pathwise version of the Itô formula, conceiving the construction of an integral of a $C^1$-class function of a càdlàg path with respect to that path itself, as a limit of non-anticipative Riemann sums. His purely analytical approach does not ask for any probabilistic structure, which may instead come into play only at a later point by considering stochastic processes that satisfy almost surely, i.e. for almost all paths, the analytical requirements. In this case, the so-called Föllmer integral provides a path-by-path construction of the stochastic integral. Föllmer's framework turns out to be of main interest in finance (see also [97], [47, Sections 4,5], and [99, Chapter 2]) as it allows to avoid any probabilistic assumption on the dynamics of traded assets and consequently to avoid any model risk/ambiguity. Reasonably, only observed price trajectories are involved.

In 1994, Bick and Willinger provided an interesting economic interpretation of Föllmer’s pathwise calculus, leading to new perspectives in the mathematical modeling of financial markets. Bick and Willinger reduced the computation of the initial cost of a replicating trading strategy to an exercise of analysis. Moreover, for a given price trajectory (state of the world), they showed one is able to compute the outcome of a given trading strategy, that is the gain from trade. Other contributions towards the pathwise characterization of stochastic integrals have been obtained via probabilistic techniques by Wong and Zakai (1965), Bichteler, Karandikar and Nutz (only existence), and via convergence of discrete-time economies by Willinger and Taqqu.
We are interested only in the model-free approach: we set our framework in a similar way to [11], and we enhance it by the aid of the pathwise calculus for non-anticipative functionals, developed by Cont and Fournié [21]. This theory extends the Föllmer’s pathwise calculus to a large class of non-anticipative functionals.

Another problem related to the model uncertainty, addressed in the second part of this thesis is the robustness of hedging strategies used by market agents to cover the risks involved in the sale of financial derivatives. The issue of robustness came to light in the nineties, dealing mostly with the analysis of the performance, in a given complete model, of pricing and hedging simple payoffs under a mis-specification of the volatility process. The problem under consideration is the following. Let us imagine a market participant who sells an (exotic) option with payoff $H$ and maturity $T$ on some underlying asset which is assumed to follow some model (say, Black-Scholes), at price given by

$$V_t = E^Q[H|\mathcal{F}_t]$$

and hedges the resulting profit and loss using the hedging strategy derived from the same model (say, Black-Scholes delta hedge for $H$). However, the true dynamics of the underlying asset may, of course, be different from the assumed dynamics. Therefore, the hedger is interested in a few questions: How good is the result of the hedging strategy? How ‘robust’ is it to model mis-specification? How does the hedging error relate to model parameters and option characteristics? In 1998, El Karoui et al. [43] provided an answer to the important questions above in the setting of diffusion models, for non-path-dependent options. They provided an explicit formula for the profit and loss, or tracking error as they call it, of the hedging strategy. Specifically, they show that if the underlying asset follows a Markovian diffusion

$$dS_t = r(t)S(t)dt + S(t)\sigma(t)dW(t)$$

under $\mathbb{P}$

such that the discounted price $S/M$ is a square-integrable martingale, then a hedging strategy computed in a (mis-specified) model with local volatility
$\sigma_0$, satisfying some technical conditions, leads to a tracking error equal to
\[ \int_0^T \sigma_0^2(t, S(t)) - \sigma^2(t) \left( \frac{\Gamma(t)}{2} \right) e^{\int_0^t r(s) ds} \partial_{xx} f(t, S(t)) \, dt, \]
P-almost surely. This fundamental equation, called by Davis [27] ‘the most important equation in option pricing theory’, shows that the exposure of a mis-specified delta hedge over a short time period is proportional to the Gamma of the option times the specification error measured in quadratic variation terms. Other two papers studying the monotonicity and super-replication properties of non-path-dependent option prices under mis-specified models are [8] and [57], respectively by PDE and coupling techniques. The robustness of dynamic hedging strategies in the context of model ambiguity has been considered by several authors in the literature (Bick and Willinger [11], Avellaneda et al. [4], Lyons [71], Cont [18]). Schied and Stadje [98] studied the robustness of delta hedging strategies for discretely monitored path-dependent derivatives in a Markovian diffusion (‘local volatility’) model from a pathwise perspective: they looked at the performance of the delta hedging strategy derived from some model when applied to the realized underlying price path, rather than to some supposedly true stochastic dynamics. In the present thesis, we investigate the robustness of delta hedging from this pathwise perspective, but we consider a general square-integrable exponential model used by the hedger for continuously - instead of discretely - monitored path-dependent derivatives. In order to conduct this pathwise analysis, we resort to the pathwise functional calculus developed in Cont and Fournié [21] and the functional Itô calculus developed in [22, 19]. In particular we use the results of Chapter 3 of this thesis, which provide an analytical framework for the analysis of self-financing trading strategies in a continuous-time financial market.

The last chapter of this thesis deals with a completely different problem, that is the search for accurate approximation formulas for the price of financial derivatives under a model with local volatility and Lévy-type jumps. Precisely, we consider a one-dimensional local Lévy model: the risk-neutral
dynamics of the underlying log-asset process $X$ is given by

$$dX(t) = \mu(t, X(t-))dt + \sigma(t, X(t))dW(t) + dJ(t),$$

where $W$ is a standard real Brownian motion on a filtered probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, (\mathcal{F}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}, \mathbb{P})$ with the usual assumptions on the filtration and $J$ is a pure-jump Lévy process, independent of $W$, with Lévy triplet $(\mu_1, 0, \nu)$. Our main result is a fourth order approximation formula of the characteristic function $\phi_{X^{t,x}(T)}$ of the log-asset price $X^{t,x}(T)$ starting from $x$ at time $t$, that is

$$\phi_{X^{t,x}(T)}(\xi) = E^p \left[ e^{i\xi X^{t,x}(T)} \right], \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R},$$

In some particular cases, we also obtain an explicit approximation of the transition density of $X$.

Local Lévy models of this form have attracted an increasing interest in the theory of volatility modeling (see, for instance, [3], [16] and [24]); however to date only in a few cases closed pricing formulae are available. Our approximation formulas provide a way to compute efficiently and accurately option prices and sensitivities by using standard and well-known Fourier methods (see, for instance, Heston [56], Carr and Madan [15], Raible [90] and Lipton [69]).

We derive the approximation formulas by introducing an “adjoint” expansion method: this is worked out in the Fourier space by considering the adjoint formulation of the pricing problem. Generally speaking, our approach makes use of Fourier analysis and PDE techniques.

The thesis is structured as follows:

**Chapter 1** The first chapter introduces the pathwise functional calculus, as developed by Cont and Fournié [21, 19], and states some of its key results. The most important theorem is a change-of-variable formula extending the pathwise Itô formula proven in [46] to non-anticipative functionals, and applies to a class of paths with finite quadratic variation. The chapter then includes a discussion on the different notions of quadratic variation given by different authors in the literature.
Chapter 2  The second chapter presents the probabilistic counterpart of the pathwise functional calculus, the so-called ‘functional Itô calculus’, following the ground-breaking work of Cont and Fournié [20, 22, 19]. Moreover, the weak functional calculus, which applies to a large class of square-integrable processes, is introduced. Then, in Section 2.3 we show how to apply the functional Itô calculus to extend the relation between Markov processes and partial differential equations to the path-dependent setting. These tools have useful applications for the pricing and hedging of path-dependent derivatives. In this respect, we state the universal pricing and hedging formulas. Finally, in Section 2.4 we report the results linking forward-backward stochastic differential equations to path-dependent partial differential equations and we recall some of the recent papers investigating weak and viscosity solutions of such path-dependent PDEs.

Chapter 3  Section 3.1 presents a synopsis of the various approaches in the literature attempting a pathwise construction of stochastic integrals, and clarifies the connection with appropriate no-arbitrage conditions. In Section 3.2 we set our analytical framework and we start by defining simple trading strategies, whose trading times are covered by the elements of a given sequence of partitions of the time horizon $[0, T]$ and for which the self-financing condition is straightforward. We also remark on the difference between our setting and the ones presented in Section 3.1.2 about no-arbitrage and we provide some kind of justification, in terms of a condition on the set of admissible price paths, to the assumptions underlying our main results. In Section 3.3 we define equivalent self-financing conditions for (non-simple) trading strategies on a set of paths, whose gain from trading is the limit of gains of simple strategies and satisfies the pathwise counterpart equation of the classical self-financing condition. Similar conditions were assumed in [11] for convergence of general trading strategies. In Section 3.4 we show the first of the main results of the chapter: in Proposition 3.7 for the continuous case and in Proposition 3.8 for the càdlàg case, we obtain the path-by-path
computability of the gain of path-dependent trading strategies in a certain class of \( \mathbb{R}^d \)-valued càdlàg adapted processes, which are also self-financing on the set of paths with finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \). For dynamic asset positions \( \phi \) in the vector space of *vertical 1-forms*, the gain of the corresponding self-financing trading strategy is well-defined as a càdlàg process \( G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi) \) such that

\[
G(t, \omega; \phi) = \int_0^t \phi(u, \omega_u) \cdot d\Pi \omega
\]

\[
= \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t^n_i \in \pi_n, t^n_i \leq t} \phi(t^n_i, \omega^n_{t^n_i}) \cdot (\omega(t^n_{i+1}) - \omega(t^n_i))
\]

for all continuous paths of finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \), where \( \omega^n \) is a piecewise constant approximation of \( \omega \) defined in (1.14). In Section 3.5, we present a pathwise replication result, Proposition 3.9, that can be seen as the model-free and path-dependent counterpart of the well known pricing PDE in mathematical finance, giving furthermore an explicit formula for the hedging error. That is, if a ‘smooth’ non-anticipative functional \( F \) solves

\[
\begin{align*}
DF(t, \omega) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( A(t) \cdot \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \right) &= 0, \quad t \in [0, T), \omega \in Q_A(\Pi) \\
F(T, \omega) &= H(\omega),
\end{align*}
\]

where \( H \) is a continuous (in sup norm) payoff functional and \( Q_A(\Pi) \) is the set of paths with absolutely continuous quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) with density \( A \), then the hedging error of the delta-hedging strategy for \( H \) with initial investment \( F(0, \cdot) \) and asset position \( \nabla \omega F \) is

\[
\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \cdot \left( A(t) - \tilde{A}(t) \right) \right) dt
\]

(1)

on all paths \( \omega \in Q_A(\Pi) \). In particular, if the underlying price path \( \omega \) lies in \( Q_A(\Pi) \), the delta-hedging strategy \( (F(0, \cdot), \nabla \omega F) \) replicates the \( T \)-claim with payoff \( H \) and its portfolio’s value at any time \( t \in [0, T] \) is given by \( F(t, \omega_t) \). The explicit error formula (11) is the purely analytical counterpart of the probabilistic formula given in [43], where a mis-specification of volatility is considered in a stochastic framework. Finally, in Section 3.6 we propose, in
Proposition 3.10, the construction of a family of pathwise integral operators (indexed by the paths) as extended isometries between normed spaces defined as quotient spaces.

Chapter 4 The last chapter begins with a review of the results, from the present literature, that focus on the problem of robustness which we are interested in, in particular the propagation of convexity and the hedging error formula for non-path-dependent derivatives, as well as a contribution to the pathwise analysis of path-dependent hedging for discretely-monitored derivatives. In Section 4.2, we introduce the notion of robustness that we are investigating (see Definition 4.12): the delta-hedging strategy is robust on a certain set $U$ of price paths if it super-replicates the claim at maturity, when trading with the market prices, as far as the price trajectory belongs to $U$. We then state in Proposition 4.2 a first result which applies to the case where the derivative being sold admits a smooth pricing functional under the model used by the hedger: robustness holds if the second vertical derivative of the value functional, $\nabla^2 \omega F$, is (almost everywhere) of same sign as the difference between the model volatility and the realized market volatility. Moreover, we give the explicit representation of the hedging error at maturity, that is

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left( \sigma(t, \omega)^2 - \sigma^{\text{mkt}}(t, \omega)^2 \right) \omega^2(t) \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) dt,$$

where $\sigma$ is the model volatility and $\sigma^{\text{mkt}}$ is the realized market volatility, defined by $t \mapsto \sigma^{\text{mkt}}(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)} \sqrt{\frac{d}{dt}[w](t)}$. In Section 4.4, Proposition 4.4 provides a constructive existence result for a pricing functional which is twice left-continuously vertically differentiable on continuous paths, given a log-price payoff functional $h$ which is vertically smooth on the space of continuous paths (see Definition 4.15). We then show in Section 4.5, namely in Proposition 4.5, that a sufficient condition for the second vertical derivative of the pricing functional to be positive is the convexity of the real map

$$\nu^H(\cdot; t, \omega) : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}, \quad e \mapsto \nu^H(e; t, \omega) = H \left( \omega(1 + e I_{[t,T]}) \right)$$
in a neighborhood of 0. This condition may be readily checked for all path-dependent payoffs. In Section 4.3 we analyze the contribution of jumps of the price trajectory to the hedging error obtained trading on the market according to a delta-hedging strategy. We show in Proposition 4.3 that the term carried by the jumps is of negative sign if the second vertical derivative of the value functional is positive. In Section 4.6 we consider a specific pricing model with path-dependent volatility, the Hobson-Rogers model. Finally, in Section 4.7 we consider a specific examples, specifically the hedging of discretely monitored path-dependent derivatives, Asian options and barrier options. In the first case, we show in Lemma 4.18 that in the Black-Scholes model the pricing functional is of class \( C^{1,2}_{\text{loc}} \) and its vertical and horizontal derivatives are given in closed form. Regarding Asian options, both the Black-Scholes and the Hobson-Rogers pricing functional have already been proved to be regular by means of classical results, and, assuming that the market price path lies in the set of paths with absolutely continuous finite quadratic variation along the given sequence of partitions and the model volatility overestimates the realized market volatility, the delta hedge is robust. Regarding barrier options, the robustness fails to be satisfied: Black-Scholes delta-hedging strategies for barrier options are not robust to volatility mis-specifications.

Chapter 5  Chapter 5, independent from the rest of the thesis, is based on joint work with Andrea Pascucci and Stefano Pagliarani.

In Section 5.1 we present the general procedure that allows to approximate analytically the transition density (or the characteristic function), in terms of the solutions of a sequence of nested Cauchy problems. Then we also prove explicit error bounds for the expansion that generalize some classical estimates. In Section 5.2 and Section 5.3 the previous Cauchy problems are solved explicitly by using different approaches. Precisely, in Section 5.2 we focus on the special class of local Lévy models with Gaussian jumps and we provide a heat kernel expansion of the transition density of the underlying
process. The same results are derived in an alternative way in Subsection 5.2.1 by working in the Fourier space.

Section 5.3 contains the main contribution of the chapter: we consider the general class of local Lévy models and provide high order approximations of the characteristic function. Since all the computations are carried out in the Fourier space, we are forced to introduce a dual formulation of the approximating problems, which involves the adjoint (forward) Kolmogorov operator. Even if at first sight the adjoint expansion method seems a bit odd, it turns out to be much more natural and simpler than the direct formulation. To the best of our knowledge, the interplay between perturbation methods and Fourier analysis has not been previously studied in finance. Actually our approach seems to be advantageous for several reasons:

(i) working in the Fourier space is natural and allows to get simple and clear results;

(ii) we can treat the entire class of Lévy processes and not only jump-diffusion processes or processes which can be approximated by heat kernel expansions –potentially, we can take as leading term of the expansion every process which admits an explicit characteristic function and not necessarily a Gaussian kernel;

(iii) our method can be easily adapted to the case of stochastic volatility or multi-asset models;

(iv) higher order approximations are rather easy to derive and the approximation results are generally very accurate. Potentially, it is possible to derive approximation formulae for the characteristic function and plain vanilla options, at any prescribed order. For example, in Subsection 5.3.1 we provide also the 3rd and 4th order expansions of the characteristic function, used in the numerical tests of Section 5.4. A Mathematica notebook with the implemented formulae is freely available on https://explicitsolutions.wordpress.com.
Finally, in Section 5.4 we present some numerical tests under the Merton and Variance-Gamma models and show the effectiveness of the analytical approximations compared with Monte Carlo simulation.
Chapter 1

Pathwise calculus for non-anticipative functionals

This chapter is devoted to the presentation of the pathwise calculus for non-anticipative functionals developed by Cont and Fournié \[21\] and having as main result a change of variable formula (also called *chain rule*) for non-anticipative functionals. This pathwise functional calculus extends the pathwise calculus introduced by Föllmer in his seminal paper *Calcul d’Itô sans probabilités* in 1981. Its probabilistic counterpart, called the ‘functional Itô calculus’ and presented in Chapter 2, can either stand by itself or rest entirely on the pathwise results, e.g. by introducing a probability measure under which the integrator process is a semimartingale. This shows clearly the pathwise nature of the theory, as well as Föllmer proved that the classical Itô formula has a pathwise meaning. Other chain rules were derived in \[78\] for extended Riemann-Stieltjes integrals and for a type of one-sided integral similar to Föllmer’s one.

Before presenting the functional case we are concerned with, let us set the stage by introducing the pathwise calculus for ordinary functions. First, let us give the definition of quadratic variation for a function that we are going to use throughout this thesis and review other notions of quadratic variation.
1.1 Quadratic variation along a sequence of partitions

Let \( \Pi = \{\pi_n\}_{n \geq 1} \) be a sequence of partitions of \([0, T]\), that is for all \( n \geq 1 \)
\( \pi_n = (t^n_i)_{i=0,\ldots,m(n)} \), \( 0 = t^n_0 < \ldots < t^n_{m(n)} = T \). We say that \( \Pi \) is dense if
\( \bigcup_{n \geq 1} \pi_n \) is dense in \([0, T]\), or equivalently the mesh \( |\pi_n| := \max_{i=1,\ldots,m(n)} |t^n_i - t^n_{i-1}| \) goes to 0 as \( n \) goes to infinity, and we say that \( \Pi \) is nested if \( \pi_{n+1} \subset \pi_n \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \).

**Definition 1.1.** Let \( \Pi \) be a dense sequence of partitions of \([0, T]\), a càdlàg function \( x : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R} \) is said to be of finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) if there exists a non-negative càdlàg function \( [x]_\Pi : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R}_+ \) such that
\[
\forall t \in [0, T], \quad [x]_\Pi(t) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0,\ldots,m(n)-1; \ t^n_i \leq t} (x(t_{i+1}^n) - x(t_i^n))^2 < \infty \quad (1.1)
\]
and
\[
[x]_\Pi(t) = [x]_\Pi^c(t) + \sum_{0 < s \leq t} \Delta x^2(s), \quad t \in [0, T], \quad (1.2)
\]
where \([x]_\Pi^c \) is a continuous non-decreasing function and \( \Delta x(t) := x(t) - x(t-) \) as usual. In this case, the non-decreasing function \([x]_\Pi \) is called the quadratic variation of \( x \) along \( \Pi \).

Note that the quadratic variation \([x]_\Pi \) depends strongly on the sequence of partitions \( \Pi \). Indeed, as remarked in [19, Example 2.18], for any real-valued continuous function we can construct a sequence of partition along which that function has null quadratic variation.

In the multi-dimensional case, the definition is modified as follows.

**Definition 1.2.** An \( \mathbb{R}^d \)-valued càdlàg function \( x \) is of finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) if, for all \( 1 \leq i, j \leq d \), \( x^i, x^i + x^j \) have finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \). In this case, the function \([x]_\Pi \) has values in the set \( S^+(d) \) of positive symmetric \( d \times d \) matrices:
\[
\forall t \in [0, T], \quad [x]_\Pi(t) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0,\ldots,m(n)-1; \ t^n_i \leq t} \left( x(t_{i+1}^n) - x(t_i^n) \right) \cdot \left( x(t_{i+1}^n) - x(t_i^n) \right)^t,
\]
1.1. Quadratic variation of paths

whose elements are given by
\[
([x]_{ij})(t) = \frac{1}{2} \left( [x^i + x^j]_{\Pi}(t) - [x^i]_{\Pi}(t) - [x^j]_{\Pi}(t) \right) \\
= [x^i, x^j]_{\Pi}(t) + \sum_{0 < s \leq t} \Delta x^i(s) \Delta x^j(s)
\]
for \( i, j = 1, \ldots, d \).

For any set \( U \) of càdlàg paths with values in \( \mathbb{R} \) (or \( \mathbb{R}^d \)), we denote by \( Q(U, \Pi) \) the subset of \( U \) of paths having finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \).

Note that \( Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) \) is not a vector space, because assuming \( x^1, x^2 \in Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) \) does not imply \( x^1 + x^2 \in Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) \) in general. This is the reason of the additional requirement \( x^i + x^j \in Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) \) in Definition 1.2. As remarked in [19, Remark 2.20], the subset of paths \( x \) being \( C^1 \)-functions of a same path \( \omega \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d) \), i.e.

\[
\{ x \in Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi), \exists f \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^d, \mathbb{R}), x(t) = f(\omega(t)) \forall t \in [0, T] \},
\]
is instead closed with respect to the quadratic variation composed with the sum of two elements.

Henceforth, when considering a function \( x \in Q(U, \Pi) \), we will drop the subscript in the notation of its quadratic variation, thus denoting \([x]_{\Pi} \) instead of \([x]_{\Pi} \).

1.1.1 Relation with the other notions of quadratic variation

An important distinguish is between Definition 1.1 and the notions of 2-variation and local 2-variation considered in the theory of extended Riemann-Stieltjes integrals (see e.g. Dudley and Norvaiša [35, Chapters 1,2] and Norvaiša [78, Section 1]). Let \( f \) be any real-valued function on \([0, T]\) and \( 0 < p < \infty \), the \( p \)-variation of \( f \) is defined as

\[
v_p(f) := \sup_{\kappa \in P([0, T])} s_p(f; \kappa) \tag{1.3}
\]
where $P[0, T]$ is the set of all partitions of $[0, T]$ and

$$s_p(f; \kappa) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} |f(t_i) - f(t_{i-1})|^p, \quad \text{for } \kappa = \{t_i\}_{i=0}^{n} \in P[0, T].$$

The set of functions with finite $p$-variation is denoted by $\mathcal{W}_p$. We also denote by $\text{vi}(f)$ the variation index of $f$, that is the unique number in $[0, \infty]$ such that

$$v_p(f) < \infty, \quad \text{for all } p > \text{vi}(f),$$

$$v_p(f) = \infty, \quad \text{for all } p < \text{vi}(f).$$

For $1 < p < \infty$, $f$ has the *local* $p$-variation if the directed function $(s_p(f; \cdot), \mathcal{R})$, where $\mathcal{R} := \{\mathcal{R}(\kappa) = \{\pi \in P[0, T], \kappa \subset \pi\}, \kappa \in P[0, T]\}$, converges. An equivalent characterization of functions with local $p$-variation was introduced by Love and Young [70] and it is given by the Wiener class $\mathcal{W}_p^*$ of functions $f \in \mathcal{W}_p$ such that

$$\limsup_{\kappa, \mathcal{R}} s_p(f; \kappa) = \sum_{(0,T]} |\Delta^- f|^p + \sum_{[0,T)} |\Delta^+ f|^p,$$

where the two sums converge unconditionally. We refer to [78, Appendix A] for convergence of directed functions and unconditionally convergent sums. The Wiener class satisfies $\bigcup_{1 \leq q < p} \mathcal{W}_q \subset \mathcal{W}_p^* \subset \mathcal{W}_p$.

A theory on Stieltjes integrability for functions of bounded $p$-variation was developed by Young [112, 113] in the thirties and generalized among others by [36, 77] around the years 2000. According to Young’s most well known theorem on Stieltjes integrability, if

$$f \in \mathcal{W}_p, \ g \in \mathcal{W}_q, \ p^{-1} + q^{-1} > 1, \ p, q > 0, \quad (1.4)$$

then the integral $\int_0^T f \, dg$ exists: in the Riemann-Stieltjes sense if $f, g$ have no common discontinuities, in the refinement Riemann-Stieltjes sense if $f, g$ have no common discontinuities on the same side, and always in the Central Young sense. [36] showed that under condition (1.4) also the refinement Young-Stieltjes integral always exists. However, in the applications, we often deal with paths of unbounded 2-variation, like sample paths of the Brownian
1.1. Quadratic variation of paths

motion. For example, given a Brownian motion $B$ on a complete probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$, the pathwise integral $(RS)\int_0^T f dB(\cdot, \omega)$ is defined in the Riemann-Stieltjes sense, for $\mathbb{P}$-almost all $\omega \in \Omega$, for any function having bounded $p$-variation for some $p < 2$, which does not apply to sample paths of $B$. In particular, in Mathematical Finance, one necessarily deals with price paths having unbounded 2-variation. In the special case of a market with continuous price paths, as shown in Section 3.1.2, [106] proved that non-constant price paths must have a variation index equal to 2 and infinite 2-variation in order to rule out ‘arbitrage opportunities of the first kind’. In the special case where the integrand $f$ is replaced by a smooth function of the integrator $g$, weaker conditions than (1.4) on the $p$-variation are sufficient (see [77] or the survey in [78, Chapter 2.4]) to obtain chain rules and integration-by-parts formulas for extended Riemann-Stieltjes integrals, like the refinement Young-Stieltjes integral, the symmetric Young-Stieltjes integral, the Central Young integral, the Left and Right Young integrals, and others. However, these conditions are still quite restrictive.

As a consequence, other notions of quadratic variation were formulated and integration theories for them followed.

### Föllmer’s quadratic variation and pathwise calculus

In 1981, Föllmer [46] derived a pathwise version of the Itô formula, conceiving a construction path-by-path of the stochastic integral of a special class of functions. His purely analytic approach does not ask for any probabilistic structure, which may instead come into play only in a later moment by considering stochastic processes that satisfy almost surely, i.e. for almost all paths, a certain condition. Föllmer considers functions on the half line $[0, \infty)$, but we present here his definitions and results adapted to the finite horizon time $[0, T]$. His notion of quadratic variation is given in terms of weak convergence of measures and is renamed here in his name in order to make the distinguish between the different definitions.

### Definition 1.3

Given a dense sequence $\Pi = \{\pi_n\}_{n \geq 1}$ of partitions of $[0, T]$. 

Chapter 1. PATHWISE FUNCTIONAL CALCULUS

for \( n \geq 1 \pi_n = (t^n_i)_{i=0,\ldots,m(n)}, \; 0 = t^n_0 < \ldots < t^n_{m(n)} < \infty, \) a càdlàg function \( x : [0,T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \) is said to have Föllmer’s quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) if the Borel measures

\[
\xi_n := \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} (x(t^n_{i+1}) - x(t^n_i))^2 \delta_{t^n_i},
\]

where \( \delta_{t^n_i} \) is the Dirac measure centered in \( t^n_i \), converge weakly to a finite measure \( \xi \) on \([0,T]\) with cumulative function \([x]\) and Lebesgue decomposition

\[
[x](t) = [x]^c(t) + \sum_{0<s\leq t} \Delta x^2(s), \quad \forall t \in [0,T]
\]

where \([x]^c\) is the continuous part.

**Proposition 1.1** (Föllmer’s pathwise Itô formula). Let \( x : [0,T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \) be a càdlàg function having Föllmer’s quadratic variation along \( \Pi \). Then, for all \( t \in [0,T] \), a function \( f \in C^2(\mathbb{R}) \) satisfies

\[
f(x(t)) = f(x(0)) + \int_0^t f'(x(s-))dx(s) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{[0,t]} f''(x(s-))d[x](s)
\]

\[
+ \sum_{0<s\leq t} \left( f(x(s)) - f(x(s-)) - f'(x(s-))\Delta x(s) - \frac{1}{2} f''(x(s-))\Delta x(s)^2 \right)
\]

\[
= f(x(0)) + \int_0^t f'(x(s-))dx(s) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{[0,t]} f''(x(s))d[x]^c(s)
\]

\[
+ \sum_{0<s\leq t} (f(x(s)) - f(x(s-)) - f'(x(s-))\Delta x(s)),
\]

where the pathwise definition

\[
\int_0^t f'(x(s-))dx(s) := \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t^n_i \leq t} f'(x(t^n_i)) \left( x(t^n_i+1 \wedge T) - x(t^n_i \wedge T) \right)
\]

is well posed by absolute convergence.

The integral on the left-hand side of (1.8) is referred to as the Föllmer integral of \( f \circ x \) with respect to \( x \) along \( \Pi \).
1.1. Quadratic variation of paths

In the multi-dimensional case, where $x$ is $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued and $f \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$, the pathwise Itô formula gives

$$f(x(t)) = f(x(0)) + \int_0^t \nabla f(x(s-)) \cdot dx(s) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{[0,t]} \text{tr} (\nabla^2 f(x(s))d[x]^c(s))$$

$$+ \sum_{0<s\leq t} (f(x(s)) - f(x(s-)) - \nabla f(x(s-)) \cdot \Delta x(s))$$

(1.9)

and

$$\int_0^t \nabla f(x(s-)) \cdot dx(s) := \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t_i^n \leq t} \nabla f(x(t_i^n)) \cdot (x(t_{i+1}^n) - x(t_i^n)),$$

where $[x] = ([x^i, x^j])_{i,j=1,...,d}$ and, for all $t \geq 0$,

$$[x^i, x^j](t) = \frac{1}{2} ([x^i + x^j](t) - [x^i](t) - [x^j](t))$$

$$= [x^i, x^j]^c(t) + \sum_{0<s\leq t} \Delta x^i(s) \Delta x^j(s).$$

Föllmer also pointed out that the class of functions with finite quadratic variation is stable under $C^1$ transformations and, given $x$ with finite quadratic variation along $\Pi$ and $f \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$, the composite function $y = f \circ x$ has finite quadratic variation

$$[y](t) = \int_{[0,t]} \text{tr} (\nabla^2 f(x(s))^c d[x]^c(s)) + \sum_{0<s\leq t} \Delta y^2(s).$$

Further, he has enlarged the scope of the above results by considering stochastic processes with almost sure finite quadratic variation along some proper sequence of partition. For example, let $S$ be a semimartingale on a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, (\mathcal{F}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}, \mathbb{P})$, it is well known that there exists a sequence of random partitions, $\Pi = (\pi_n)_{n \geq 1}$, $|\pi_n| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0 \mathbb{P}$-almost surely, such that

$$\mathbb{P} \{ \omega \in \Omega, S(\cdot, \omega) \text{ has Föllmer's quadratic variation along } \Pi \} = 1.$$

More generally, this holds for any so-called Dirichlet (or finite energy) process, that is the sum of a semimartingale and a process with zero quadratic variation along the dyadic subdivisions. Thus, the pathwise Itô formula holds
Chapter 1. PATHWISE FUNCTIONAL CALCULUS

and the pathwise Föllmer integral is still defined for all paths outside a null set.

A last comment on the link between Itô and Föllmer integrals is the following. For a semimartingale \( X \) and a càdlàg adapted process \( H \), we know that, for any \( t \geq 0 \),

\[
\sum_{t^n_i \leq t} H(t^n_i) \cdot (x(t^n_{i+1}) - x(t^n_i)) \xrightarrow{p} \int_0^t H(s-) \cdot dX(s),
\]

hence we have almost sure pathwise convergence by choosing properly an absorbing set of paths dependent on \( H \), which is not of practical utility. However, in the case \( H = f \circ X \) with \( f \in C^1 \), we can select a priori the null set out of which the definition (1.8) holds and so, by almost sure uniqueness of the limit in probability, the Föllmer integral must coincide almost surely with the Itô integral.

Norvaiša’s quadratic variation and chain rules

Norvaiša’s notion of quadratic variation was proposed in [78] in order to weaken the requirement of local 2-variation used to prove chain rules and integration-by-parts formulas for extended Riemann-Stieltjes integrals.

**Definition 1.4.** Given a dense nested sequence \( \lambda = \{\lambda_n\}_{n \geq 1} \) of partitions of \([0, T]\), Norvaiša’s quadratic \( \lambda \)-variation of a regulated function \( f : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R} \) is defined, if it exists, as a regulated function \( H : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R} \) such that \( H(0) = 0 \) and, for any \( 0 \leq s \leq t \leq T \),

\[
H(t) - H(s) = \lim_{n \to \infty} s_2(f; \lambda_n \cap [s, t]),
\]

(1.10)

\[
\Delta^- H(t) = (\Delta^- f(t))^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta^+ H(t) = (\Delta^+ f(t))^2,
\]

(1.11)

where \( \lambda_n \cap [s, t] := (\lambda_n \cap [s, t]) \cup \{s\} \cup \{t\} \), \( \Delta^- x(t) = x(t) - x(t-) \), \( \Delta^+ x(t) = x(t+) - x(t) \).

In reality, Norvaiša’s original definition is given in terms of an additive upper continuous function defined on the simplex of extended intervals of
1.1. Quadratic variation of paths

[0, T], but he showed the equivalence to the definition given here and we chose to report the latter because it allows us to avoid introducing further notations.

Following Föllmer’s approach in [46], Norvaiša [78] also proved a chain rule for a function with finite \( \lambda \)-quadratic variation, involving a new type of integrals called Left (respectively Right) Cauchy \( \lambda \)-integrals. We report here the formula obtained for the left integral, but a symmetric formula holds for the right integral. Given two regulated functions \( f, g \) on \([0, T]\) and a dense nested sequence of partitions \( \lambda = \{\lambda_n\} \), then the Left Cauchy \( \lambda \)-integral \((LC)\int \phi d\lambda g\) is defined on \([0, T]\) if there exists a regulated function \( \Phi \) on \([0, T]\) such that \( \Phi(0) = 0 \) and, for any \( 0 \leq u < v \leq T \),

\[
\Phi(v) - \Phi(u) = \lim_{n \to \infty} S_{LC}(\phi, g; \lambda_n \cap [u, v]),
\]

\[
\Delta^- \Phi(v) = \phi(v-)\Delta^- g(v), \quad \Delta^+ \Phi(u) = \phi \Delta^+ g(u),
\]

where

\[
S_{LC}(\phi, g; \kappa) := \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \phi(t_i)(g(t_{i+1}) - g(t_i)) \quad \text{for any } \kappa = \{t_i\}_{i=0}^m.
\]

In such a case, denote \((LC)\int_u^v \phi d\lambda g := \Phi(v) - \Phi(u)\).

**Proposition 1.2** (Proposition 1.4 in [78]). Let \( g \) be a regulated function on \([0, T]\) and \( \lambda = \{\lambda_n\} \) a dense nested sequence of partitions such that \( \{t : \Delta^+ g(t) \neq 0\} \subset \cup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \lambda_n \). The following are equivalent:

(i) \( g \) has Norvaiša’s \( \lambda \)-quadratic variation;

(ii) for any \( C^1 \) function \( \phi \), \( \phi \circ g \) is Left Cauchy \( \lambda \)-integrable on \([0, T]\) and, for any \( 0 \leq u < v \leq T \),

\[
\Phi \circ g(v) - \Phi \circ g(u) = (LC)\int_u^v (\phi \circ g) d\lambda g + \frac{1}{2} \int_u^v (\phi' \circ g) d[g]_\lambda^c \quad (1.12)
\]

\[
+ \sum_{t \in [u, v)} \left( \Delta^- (\Phi \circ g)(t) - (\phi \circ g)(t-) \Delta^- g(t) \right)
\]

\[
+ \sum_{t \in [u, v]} \left( \Delta^+(\Phi \circ g)(t) - (\phi \circ g)(t) \Delta^+ g(t) \right).
\]
Chapter 1. PATHWISE FUNCTIONAL CALCULUS

Note that the change of variable formula (1.12) gives the Föllmer’s formula (1.7) when \( g \) is right-continuous, and the Left Cauchy \( \lambda \)-integral coincides with the Föllmer integral along \( \lambda \) defined in (1.8).

Vovk’s quadratic variation

Vovk [104] defines a notion of quadratic variation along a sequence of partitions not necessarily dense in \([0, T]\) and uses it to investigate the properties of ‘typical price paths’, that are price paths which rule out arbitrage opportunities in his pathwise framework, following a game-theoretic probability approach.

**Definition 1.5.** Given a nested sequence \( \Pi = \{\pi_n\}_{n \geq 1} \) of partitions of \([0, T]\), \( \pi_n = (t^n_i)_{i=0, \ldots, m(n)} \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), a càdlàg function \( x : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R} \) is said to have Vovk’s quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) if the sequence \( \{A^n_{\Pi}\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \) of functions defined by

\[
A^n_{\Pi}(t) := \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} (x(t^n_{i+1} \land t) - x(t^n_i \land t))^2, \quad t \in [0, T],
\]

converges uniformly in time. In this case, the limit is denoted by \( A^\Pi \) and called the Vovk’s quadratic variation of \( x \) along \( \Pi \).

An interesting result in [104] is that typical paths have the Vovk’s quadratic variation along a specific nested sequence \( \{\tau_n\}_{n \geq 1} \) of partitions composed by stopping times and such that, on each realized path \( \omega \), \( \{\tau_n(\omega)\}_{n \geq 1} \) exhausts \( \omega \), i.e. \( \{t : \Delta \omega(t) \neq 0\} \subset \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \tau_n(\omega) \) and, for each open interval \((u, v)\) in which \( \omega \) is not constant, \((u, v) \cap \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \tau_n(\omega)) \neq \emptyset \).

The most evident difference between definitions 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5 is that the first two of them require the sequence of partitions to be dense, the third one requires the sequence of partitions to be dense and nested, and the last one requires a nested sequence of partitions. Moreover, Norvaiša’s definition is given for a regulated, rather than càdlàg, function.

Vovk proved that for a nested sequence \( \Pi = \{\pi_n\}_{n \geq 1} \) of partitions of \([0, T]\) that exhausts \( \omega \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}) \), the following are equivalent:
1.1. Quadratic variation of paths

(a) \( \omega \) has Norvaiša’s quadratic \( \Pi \)-variation;

(b) \( \omega \) has Vovk’s quadratic variation along \( \Pi \);

(c) \( \omega \) has weak quadratic variation of \( \omega \) along \( \Pi \), i.e. there exists a càdlàg function \( V : [0,T] \to \mathbb{R} \) such that

\[
V(t) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} (x(t_{i+1}^n \wedge t) - x(t_i^n \wedge t))^2
\]

for all points \( t \in [0,T] \) of continuity of \( V \) and it satisfies (1.2) where \( [x]_{\Pi} \) is replace by \( V \).

Moreover, if any of the above condition is satisfied, then \( H = A^\Pi = V \).

If, furthermore, \( \Pi \) is also dense, than \( \omega \) has Föllmer’s quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) if and only if it has any of the quadratic variations in (a)-(c), in which case \( H = A^\Pi = V = [\omega] \).

In this thesis, we will always consider the quadratic variation of a càdlàg path \( w \) along a dense nested sequence \( \Pi \) of partitions that exhausts \( \omega \), in which case our Definition 1.1 is equivalent to all the other ones mentioned above. It is sufficient to note that condition (b) implies that \( \omega \) has finite quadratic variation according to Definition 1.1 and \( [\omega] = A \), because the properties in Definition 1.1 imply the ones in Definition 1.3 which, by Proposition 4 in [104], imply condition (b). Therefore, we denote \( \bar{k}(n,t) := \max\{i = 0, \ldots, m(n) - 1 : t_i^n \leq t\} \) and note that

\[
A^{\Pi}(t) - \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \sum_{t_i^n \leq t} (x(t_{i+1}^n) - x(t_i^n))^2 =
\]

\[
= (\omega(t) - \omega(t_{\bar{k}(n,t)})^2 - (\omega(t_{\bar{k}(n,t)+1}) - \omega(t_{\bar{k}(n,t)}))^2 \to 0 \quad n \to \infty
\]

by right-continuity of \( \omega \) if \( t \in \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \pi_n \), and by the assumption that \( \Pi \) exhausts \( \omega \) if \( t \notin \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \pi_n \).
1.2 Non-anticipative functionals

First, we resume the functional notation we are adopting in this thesis, according to the lecture notes [19], which unify the different notations from the present papers on the subject into a unique clear language.

As usual, we denote by $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ the space of càdlàg functions on $[0, T]$ with values in $\mathbb{R}^d$. Concerning maps $x \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$, for any $t \in [0, T]$ we denote:

- $x(t) \in \mathbb{R}^d$ its value at $t$;
- $x_t = x(t \wedge \cdot) \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ its path 'stopped' at time $t$;
- $x_{t-} = x1_{[0,t]} + x(t-)1_{[t,T]} \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$;
- for $\delta \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $x^\delta_t = x_t + \delta 1_{[t,T]} \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ the vertical perturbation of size $\delta$ of the path of $x$ stopped at $t$ over the future time interval $[t, T]$;

A non-anticipative functional on $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ is defined as a family of functionals on $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ adapted to the natural filtration $\mathcal{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0, T]}$ of the canonical process on $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$, i.e. $F = \{F(t, \cdot), t \in [0, T]\}$, such that

$$\forall t \in [0, T], \quad F(t, \cdot) : D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto \mathbb{R}$$

is $\mathcal{F}_t$-measurable.

It can be viewed as a map on the space of 'stopped' paths $\Lambda_T := \{(t, x_t) : (t, x) \in [0, T] \times D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)\}$, that is in turn the quotient of $[0, T] \times D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ by the equivalence relation $\sim$ such that

$$\forall (t, x), (t', x') \in [0, T] \times D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \quad (t, x) \sim (t', x') \iff t = t', x_t = x'_t.$$

Thus, we will usually write a non-anticipative functional as a map $F : \Lambda_T \to \mathbb{R}^d$.

The space $\Lambda_T$ is equipped with a distance $d_\infty$, defined by

$$d_\infty((t, x), (t', x')) = \sup_{u \in [0, T]} |x(u \wedge t) - x'(u \wedge t')| + |t - t'| = ||x_t - x'_t||_\infty + |t - t'|,$$
for all \((t, x), (t', x') \in \Lambda_T\). Note that \((\Lambda_T, d_\infty)\) is a complete metric space and the subset of continuous stopped paths,

\[
\mathcal{W}_T := \{(t, x) \in \Lambda_T : x \in C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)\},
\]
is a closed subspace of \((\Lambda_T, d_\infty)\).

We recall here all the notions of functional regularity that will be used henceforth.

**Definition 1.6.** A non-anticipative functional \(F\) is:

- **continuous at fixed times** if, for all \(t \in [0, T]\),
  \[
  F(t, \cdot) : ((\{t\} \times D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)) / \sim, || \cdot ||_\infty) \to \mathbb{R}
  \]
is continuous, that is
  \[
  \forall x \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists \eta > 0 : \forall x' \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d),
  ||x_t - x'_t||_\infty < \eta \Rightarrow |F(t, x) - F(t, x')| < \varepsilon;
  \]

- **jointly-continuous**, i.e. \(F \in C^{0,0}_0(\Lambda_T)\), if \(F : (\Lambda_T, d_\infty) \to \mathbb{R}\) is continuous;

- **left-continuous**, i.e. \(F \in C^{0,0}_l(\Lambda_T)\), if
  \[
  \forall (t, x) \in \Lambda_T, \forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists \eta > 0 : \forall h \in [0, t], \forall (t - h, x') \in \Lambda_T,
  d_\infty((t, x), (t - h, x')) < \eta \Rightarrow |F(t, x) - F(t - h, x')| < \varepsilon;
  \]
a symmetric definition characterizes the set \(C^{0,0}_r(\Lambda_T)\) of right-continuous functionals;

- **boundedness-preserving**, i.e. \(F \in \mathbb{B}(\Lambda_T)\), if,
  \[
  \forall K \subset \mathbb{R}^d \text{ compact}, \forall t_0 \in [0, T], \exists C_{K, t_0} > 0 : \forall t \in [0, t_0], \forall (t, x) \in \Lambda_T,
  x([0, t]) \subset K \Rightarrow |F(t, x)| < C_{K, t_0}.
  \]

Now, we recall the notions of differentiability for non-anticipative functionals.
Definition 1.7. A non-anticipative functional $F$ is said:

- horizontally differentiable at $(t, x) \in \Lambda_T$ if the limit
  \[ \lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{F(t + h, x_t) - F(t, x_t)}{h} \]
  exists and is finite, in which case it is denoted by $DF(t, x)$; if this holds for all $(t, x) \in \Lambda_T$ and $t < T$, then the non-anticipative functional $DF = (DF(t, \cdot))_{t \in [0, T)}$ is called the horizontal derivative of $F$;

- vertically differentiable at $(t, x) \in \Lambda_T$ if the map
  \[ \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}, \ e \mapsto F(t, x^e_t) \]
  is differentiable at 0 and in this case its gradient at 0 is denoted by $\nabla_\omega F(t, x)$; if this holds for all $(t, x) \in \Lambda_T$, then the $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued non-anticipative functional $\nabla_\omega F = (\nabla_\omega F(t, \cdot))_{t \in [0, T)}$ is called the vertical derivative of $F$.

Then, the class of smooth functionals is defined as follows:

- $C^{1,k}(\Lambda_T)$ the set of non-anticipative functionals $F$ which are
  - horizontally differentiable with $DF$ continuous at fixed times,
  - $k$ times vertically differentiable with $\nabla_j \omega F \in C^{0,0}(\Lambda_T)$ for $j = 0, \ldots, k$;

- $C^{1,k}_b(\Lambda_T)$ the set of non-anticipative functionals $F \in C^{1,k}(\Lambda_T)$ such that $DF, \nabla_\omega F, \ldots, \nabla_j \omega F \in \mathbb{B}(\Lambda_T)$.

However, many examples of functionals in applications fail to be globally smooth, especially those involving exit times. Fortunately, the global smoothness characterizing the class $C^{1,2}_b(\Lambda_T)$ is in fact sufficient but not necessary to get the functional Itô formula. Thus, we will often require only the following weaker property of local smoothness, introduced in [49]. A non-anticipative functional $F$ is said to be locally regular, i.e. $F \in C^{1,2}_{loc}(\Lambda_T)$, if $F \in C^{0,0}(\Lambda_T)$
and there exist a sequence of stopping times $\{\tau_k\}_{k \geq 0}$ on $(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \mathcal{F}_T, \mathbb{F})$, such that $\tau_0 = 0$ and $\tau_k \to_k \infty$, and a family of non-anticipative functionals $\{F^k \in C^{1,2}_b(\Lambda_T)\}_{k \geq 0}$, such that

$$F(t, x_t) = \sum_{k \geq 0} F^k(t, x_t) \mathbb{1}_{[\tau_k(x), \tau_{k+1}(x))}(t), \quad t \in [0, T].$$

1.3 Change of variable formulae for functionals

In 2010, Cont and Fournié [21] extended the Föllmer’s change of variable formula to non-anticipative functionals on $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$, hence allowing to define an analogue of the Föllmer integral for functionals. The pathwise formulas are also viable for a wide class of stochastic process in an “almost-sure” sense. The setting of Cont and Fournié [21] is more general than what we need, so we report here its main results in a simplified version.

Remark 1.8 (Proposition 1 in [21]). Useful pathwise regularities follow from the continuity of non-anticipative functionals:

1. If $F \in C^0_{l,0}(\Lambda_T)$, then for all $x \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ the path $t \mapsto F(t, x_{t-})$ is left-continuous;

2. If $F \in C^0_{r,0}(\Lambda_T)$, then for all $x \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ the path $t \mapsto F(t, x_t)$ is right-continuous;

3. If $F \in C^{0,0}(\Lambda_T)$, then for all $x \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ the path $t \mapsto F(t, x_t)$ is càdlàg and continuous at each point where $x$ is continuous.

4. If $F \in \mathbb{B}(\Lambda_T)$, then $\forall x \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ the path $t \mapsto F(t, x_t)$ is bounded.

Below is one of the main results of [21]: the change of variable formula for non-anticipative functionals of càdlàg paths. We only report the formula for càdlàg paths because the change of variable formula for functionals of continuous paths ([21, Theorem 3]) can then be obtained with straightforward modifications.
Chapter 1. PATHWISE FUNCTIONAL CALCULUS

Theorem 1.9 (Theorem 4 in [21]). Let $x \in Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \Pi)$ such that

$$\sup_{t \in [0, T] \setminus \pi^n} |\Delta x(t)| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0.$$  \hfill (1.13)

and denote

$$x^n := \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} x(t^n_{i+1}^-) \mathbb{I}_{(t^n_{i+1}, t^n_{i+1}^+)} + x(T) \mathbb{I}_{\{T\}} \hfill (1.14)$$

Then, for any $F \in C^{1,2}_{loc}(\Lambda_T)$, the limit

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \nabla \omega F(t^n_{i+1}, x_{t^n_{i+1}^-}) (x(t^n_{i+1}) - x(t^n_i)) \hfill (1.15)$$

exists, denoted by $\int_0^T \nabla \omega F(t, x_{t^-}) \cdot d\Pi x$, and

$$F(T, x) = F(0, x) + \int_0^T \nabla \omega F(t, x_{t^-}) \cdot d\Pi x + \int_0^T \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (\nabla_\omega^2 F(t, x_{t^-}) d[x]_T(t)) + \sum_{u \in (0, T]} (F(u, x_u) - F(u, x_{u^-}) - \nabla \omega F(u, x_{u^-}) \cdot \Delta x(u)) \hfill (1.16)$$

Note that the assumption (1.13) can always be removed, simply by including all jump times of the càdlàg path $\omega$ in the fixed sequence of partitions $\Pi$. Hence, in the sequel we will omit such an assumption.

The proof, in the simpler case of continuous paths, turns around the idea of rewriting the variation of $F(\cdot, x)$ on $[0, T]$ as the limit for $n$ going to infinity of the sum of the variations of $F(\cdot, x^n)$ on the consecutive time intervals in the partition $\pi^n$. In particular, these variations can be decomposed along two directions, horizontal and vertical. That is:

$$F(T, x_T) - F(0, x_0) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \left( F(t^n_{i+1}, x^n_{t_{i+1}^-}) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}) \right),$$

where

$$F(t^n_{i+1}, x^n_{t_{i+1}^-}) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}) = F(t^n_{i+1}, x^n_{t_{i+1}^-}) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}) + F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}). \hfill (1.17)$$

$$+ F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t_i^-}). \hfill (1.18)$$
1.3. Change of variable formulae for functionals

Then, it is possible to rewrite the two increments on the right-hand side in terms of increments of two functions on $\mathbb{R}^d$. Indeed: defined the left-continuous and right-differentiable function $\psi(u) := F(t^n_i + u, x^n_{t^n_i})$, (1.17) is equal to

$$\psi(h^n_i) - \psi(0) = \int_{t^n_i}^{t^n_{i+1}} DF(t, x^n_{t^n_i}) dt,$$

while, defined the function $\phi(u) := F(t^n_i, x^{n,u}_{t^n_i})$ of class $C^2(B(0, \eta_n), \mathbb{R})$, where

$$\eta_n := \sup\{|x(u) - x(t^n_{i+1})| + |t^n_{i+1} - t^n_i|, 0 \leq i \leq m(n) - 1, u \in [t^n_i, t^n_{i+1}]\},$$

(1.18) is equal to

$$\phi(\delta x^n_i) - \phi(0) = \nabla \omega F(t^n_i, x^{n,u}_{t^n_i}) \cdot \delta x^n_i + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t^n_i, x^{n,u}_{t^n_i}) \right) (\delta x^n_i) \delta x^n_i + r^n_i,$$

where $\delta x^n_i := x(t^n_{i+1}) - x(t^n_i)$ and

$$r^n_i \leq K |\delta x^n_i|^2 \sup_{u \in B(0, \eta_n)} \left| \nabla^2 \omega F(t^n_i, x^{n,u}_{t^n_i}) - \nabla^2 \omega F(t^n_i, x^{n,u}_{t^n_i}) \right|.$$

The sum over $i = 0, \ldots, m(n) - 1$ of (1.17), by the dominated convergence theorem, converges to $\int_0^T DF(t, x_t) dt$. On the other hand, by Lemma 12 in [21] and weak convergence of the Radon measures in (1.5), we have

$$\sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t^n_i, x^{n,u}_{t^n_i}) \right) (\delta x^n_i) \delta x^n_i \rightarrow \int_0^T \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t, x_t) d[x](t) \right)$$

and the sum of the remainders goes to 0. Therefore, the limit of the sum of the first order terms exists and the change of variable formula (see (1.21) below) holds.

The route to prove the change of variable formula for càdlàg paths is much more intricate than in the continuous case, but the idea is the following. We can rewrite the variation of $F$ over $[0, T]$ as before, but now we separate the indexes between two complementary sets $I_1(n), I_2(n)$. Namely: let $\varepsilon > 0$ and let $C_2(\varepsilon)$ be the set of jump times such that $\sum_{s \in C_2(\varepsilon)} |\Delta x(s)|^2 < \varepsilon^2$ and $C_1(\varepsilon)$ be its complementary finite set of jump times, denote $I_1(n) := \{i \in$
Chapter 1. PATHWISE FUNCTIONAL CALCULUS

\{1, \ldots, m(n)\} : (t^n_i, t^n_{i+1}] \cap C_1(\varepsilon) \neq \emptyset \} and I_2(n) := \{i \in \pi^n : i \notin I_1(n)\}, then

\[
F(T, x_T) - F(0, x_0) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i \in I_1(n)} \left( F(t^n_i, x^n_{t^n_i}), t^n_i \right) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t^n_i-}) \right) + \nonumber
+ \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i \in I_2(n)} \left( F(t^n_i, x^n_{t^n_i}), t^n_i \right) - F(t^n_i, x^n_{t^n_i-}) \right).
\]

The first sum converges, for \( n \) going to infinity, to \( \sum_{u \in C_1(\varepsilon)} (F(u, x_u) - F(u, x_{u-})) \), while the increments in the second sum are further decomposed into a horizontal and two vertical variations. After many steps:

\[
F(T, x_T) - F(0, x_0) = \int_{[0, T]} DF(t, x_t)dt + \int_{(0, T]} \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (\nabla^2 F(t, x_t)dx(t)) + \nonumber
+ \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \nabla u F_i^n (x^n_{t^n_i}, v^n_{t^n_i-}) \cdot (x(t^n_i) - x(t^n_i)) + \nonumber
+ \sum_{u \in C_1(\varepsilon)} (F(u, x_u) - F(u, x_{u-}) - \nabla u F(u, x_{u-}) : \Delta x(u) + \alpha(\varepsilon), \quad (1.19)
\]

where \( \alpha(\varepsilon) \leq K(\varepsilon^2 + T\varepsilon) \). Finally, the sum in (1.19) over \( C_1(\varepsilon) \) converges, for \( \varepsilon \) going to 0, to the same sum over \( (0, T] \) and the formula (1.16) holds.

It is important to remark that to obtain the change of variable formula on continuous paths it suffices to require the smoothness of the restriction of the non-anticipative functional \( F \) to the subspace of continuous stopped paths (see [19, Theorems 2.27, 2.28]). To this regard, it is defined the class \( C^{1,2}_b(W_T) \) of non-anticipative functionals \( F \) such that there exists an extension \( \tilde{F} \) of class \( C^{1,2}_b(\Lambda_T) \) that coincides with \( F \) if restricted to \( W_T \). Then, the following theorem holds:

**Theorem 1.10** (Theorems 2.29 in [19]). For any \( F \in C^{1,2}_b(W_T) \) and \( x \in Q(C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \Pi) \), the limit

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \nabla u F_i^n (t^n_i, x^n_{t^n_i-}) (x(t^n_i) - x(t^n_i)) \quad (1.20)
\]
1.3. Change of variable formulae for functionals

exists, denoted by \( \int_0^T \nabla \omega F(t, x_t) \cdot d^{\Pi} x \), and

\[
F(T, x) = F(0, x) + \int_0^T \nabla \omega F(t, x_t) \cdot d^{\Pi} x + \int_0^T DF(t, x_t) dt + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t, x_t) d[x](t) \right).
\]

As remarked in [21], the change of variable formula (1.16) also holds in the case of right-continuous functionals instead of left-continuous, by redefining the pathwise integral (1.15) as

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \nabla \omega F_{t_{i+1}}(x_{t_i}^{n}, v_{t_i}^{n}) \cdot (x(t_{i+1}^{n}) - x(t_i^{n}))
\]

and the stepwise approximation \( x^n \) in (1.14) as

\[
x^n := \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} x(t_i^{n}) I_{[t_i^{n}, t_{i+1}^{n})} + x(T) I_{[T]}.
\]
Chapter 2

Functional Itô Calculus

The ‘Itô calculus’ is a powerful tool at the core of stochastic analysis and lies at the foundation of modern Mathematical Finance. It is a calculus which applies to functions of the current state of a stochastic process, and extends the standard differential calculus to functions of processes with non-smooth paths of infinite variation. However, in many applications, uncertainty affects the current situation even through the whole (past) history of the process and it is necessary to consider functionals, rather than functions, of a stochastic process, i.e. quantities of the form

\[ F(X_t), \quad \text{where } X_t = \{X(u), u \in [0, t]\}. \]

These ones appear in many financial applications, such as the pricing and hedging of path-dependent options, and in (non-Markovian) stochastic control problems. One framework allowing to deal with functionals of stochastic processes is the Fréchet calculus, but many path-dependent quantities intervening in stochastic analysis are not Fréchet-differentiable. This instigated the development of a new theoretical framework to deal with functionals of a stochastic process: the Malliavin calculus \([73, 79]\), which is a weak (variational) differential calculus for functionals on the Wiener space. The theory of Malliavin calculus has found many applications in financial mathematics, specifically to problems dealing with path-dependent instruments. However, the Malliavin derivative involves perturbations affecting the whole path (both
past and future) of the process. This notion of perturbation is not readily interpretable in applications such as optimal control, or hedging, where the quantities are required to be causal or non-anticipative processes.

In an insightful paper, Bruno Dupire [37], inspired by methods used by practitioners for the sensitivity analysis of path-dependent derivatives, introduced a new notion of functional derivative, and used it to extend the Itô formula to the path-dependent case. Inspired by Dupire’s work, Cont and Fournié [20, 21, 22] developed a rigorous mathematical framework for a path-dependent extension of the Itô calculus, the Functional Itô Calculus [22], as well as a purely pathwise functional calculus [21] (see Chapter 1), proving the pathwise nature of some of the results obtained in the probabilistic framework.

The idea is to control the variations of a functional along a path by controlling its sensitivity to horizontal and vertical perturbations of the path, by defining functional derivatives corresponding to infinitesimal versions of these perturbations. These tools led to

- a new class of “path-dependent PDEs” on the space of càdlàg paths $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$, extending the Kolmogorov equations to a non-Markovian setting,

- a universal hedging formula and a universal pricing equation for path-dependent options.

In this chapter we develop the key concepts and main results of the Functional Ito calculus, following Cont and Fournié [22], Cont [19].

## 2.1 Functional Itô formulae

The change of variable formula (1.16) implies as a corollary the extension of the classical Itô formula to the case of non-anticipative functionals, called the functional Itô formula. This holds for very general stochastic processes as Dirichlet process, in particular for semimartingales. We report here
2.1. The Functional Itô formula

The results obtained with respect to càdlàg and continuous semimartingales, in which case the pathwise integral \[ \text{càdlàg case} \] coincides almost surely with the stochastic integral. The following theorems correspond to Proposition 6 in [21] and Theorem 4.1 in [22], respectively.

**Theorem 2.1** (Functional Itô formula: càdlàg case). Let \( X \) be a \( \mathbb{R}^d \)-valued semimartingale on \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P}, \mathbb{F}) \) and \( F \in \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_\text{loc}(\Lambda_T) \), then, for all \( t \in [0, T) \),

\[
F(t, X_t) = F(0, X_0) + \int_{(0,t]} \nabla \omega F(u, X_{u-}) \cdot dX(u) + \\
\quad + \int_{(0,t]} D F(u, X_{u-}) du + \int_{(0,t]} \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(u, X_{u-}) d[X]^c(u) \right) \\
\quad + \sum_{u \in (0,t]} (F(u, X_u) - F(u, X_{u-}) - \nabla \omega F(u, X_{u-}) \cdot \Delta X(u)),
\]

\( \mathbb{P} \)-almost surely. In particular, \( (F(t, X_t), t \in [0, T]) \) is a semimartingale.

**Theorem 2.2** (Functional Itô formula: continuous case). Let \( X \) be a \( \mathbb{R}^d \)-valued continuous semimartingale on \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P}, \mathbb{F}) \) and \( F \in \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_\text{loc}(\mathcal{W}_T) \), then, for all \( t \in [0, T) \),

\[
F(t, X_t) = F(0, X_0) + \int_0^t \nabla \omega F(u, X_u) \cdot dX(u) + \\
\quad + \int_0^t D F(u, X_u) du + \int_0^t \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(u, X_u) d[X](u) \right)
\]

\( \mathbb{P} \)-almost surely. In particular, \( (F(t, X_t), t \in [0, T]) \) is a semimartingale.

Although the functional Itô formulae are a consequence of the stronger pathwise change of variable formulae, Cont and Fournié [22], Cont [19] also provided a direct probabilistic proof for the functional Itô formula for continuous semimartingales, based on the classical Itô formula. The proof follows the lines of the proof to Theorem 1.9 in the case of continuous paths, first considering the case of \( X \) having values in a compact set \( K \), \( \mathbb{P} \)-almost surely, then going to the general case. The \( i \)-th increment of \( F(t, X_t) \) along the \( n \)-th partition \( \pi_n \) is decomposed as:

\[
F(t^n_{i+1}, X^n_{t^n_{i+1}-}) - F(t^n_i, X^n_{t^n_i-}) = F(t^n_{i+1}, X^n_{t^n_i}) - F(t^n_i, X^n_{t^n_i}) \\
\quad + F(t^n_i, X^n_{t^n_i}) - F(t^n_i, X^n_{t^n_i-}).
\]
The horizontal increment is treated analogously to the pathwise proof, while for the vertical increment, the classical Itô formula is applied to the partial map, which is a \( C^2 \)-function of the continuous \((F_{t_i^n} + s)_{s \geq 0}\)-semimartingale \((X(t^n_i + s) - X(t^n_i), s \geq 0)\). The sum of the increments of the functionals along \(\pi_n\) gives:

\[
F(t, X^n_t) - F(0, X^n_0) = \int_0^t \mathcal{D}F(u, X^n_{t(u)})du \\
+ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2_F(t^n_{k(u,n)}, X^n_{t(u)}) \right) d[X](u) \\
+ \int_0^t \nabla \omega F(t^n_{k(u,n)}, X^n_{t(u)} - X(t^n_{k(u,n)}) \cdot dX(u).
\]

Formula (2.1) then follows by applying the dominated convergence theorem to the Stieltjes integrals on the first two lines and the dominated convergence theorem for stochastic integrals to the stochastic integral on the third line.

As for the general case, it suffices to take a sequence of increasing compact sets \((K_n)_{n \geq 0}, \bigcup_{n \geq 0} K_n = \mathbb{R}^d\), define the stopping times \(\bar{\tau}_k := \inf \{ s < t, X_s \notin K_k \} \land t\), and apply the previous result to the stopped process \((X_{t \wedge \bar{\tau}_k})\). Finally, taking the limit for \(k\) going to infinity completes the proof.

As an immediate corollary, if \(X\) is a local martingale, for any \(F \in \mathbb{C}^{1,2}_b\), \(F(X_t, A_t)\) has finite variation if and only if \(\nabla \omega F_t = 0\) \(d[X](t) \times d\mathbb{P}\)-almost everywhere.

### 2.2 Weak functional calculus and martingale representation

Cont and Fourniè [22] extended the pathwise theory to a weak functional calculus that can be applied to all square-integrable martingales adapted to the filtration \(\mathbb{F}^X\) generated by a given \(\mathbb{R}^d\)-valued square-integrable Itô process \(X\). Cont [19] carries the extension further, that is to all square-integrable semimartingales. Below are the main results on the functional Itô calculus obtained in [22, 19].
2.2 Weak functional calculus

Let $X$ be the coordinate process on the canonical space $D([0,T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ of $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued càdlàg processes and $\mathbb{P}$ be a probability measure under which $X$ is a square-integrable semimartingale such that

$$d[X](t) = \int_0^t A(u)du$$

for some $S^d$-valued càdlàg process $A$ satisfying

$$\det(A(t)) \neq 0 \text{ for almost every } t \in [0,T], \ \mathbb{P}\text{-almost surely.}$$

(2.3)

Denote by $F = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0,T]}$ the filtration $(\mathcal{F}^X_t)_{t \in [0,T]}$ after $\mathbb{P}$-augmentation. Then define

$$C^{1,2}_{\text{loc}}(X) := \{ Y : \exists F \in C^{1,2}_{\text{loc}}, Y(t) = F(t, X_t) dt \times d\mathbb{P}\text{-a.e.} \}. \quad (2.4)$$

Thanks to the assumption (2.3), for any adapted process $Y \in C^{1,2}_b(X)$, the vertical derivative of $Y$ with respect to $X$, $\nabla_X Y(t)$, is well defined as $\nabla_X Y(t) = \nabla_{\omega} F(t, X_t)$ where $F$ satisfies (2.4), and it is unique up to an evanescent set independently of the choice of $F \in C^{1,2}_b$ in the representation (2.4).

Theorem 2.1 leads to the following representation for smooth local martingales.

**Proposition 2.1** (Prop. 4.3 in [19]). Let $Y \in C^{1,2}_b(X)$ be a local martingale, then

$$Y(T) = Y(0) + \int_0^T \nabla_X Y(t) \cdot dX(t).$$

On the other hand, under specific assumptions on $X$, this leads to an explicit martingale representation formula.

**Proposition 2.2** (Prop. 4.3 in [19]). If $X$ is a square-integrable $\mathbb{P}$-Brownian martingale, for any square integrable $\mathbb{F}$-martingale $Y \in C^{1,2}_{\text{loc}}(X)$, then $\nabla_X Y$ is the unique process in the Hilbert space

$$\mathcal{L}^2(X) := \left\{ \phi \text{ progressively-measurable, } \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P} \left[ \int_0^T |\phi(t)|^2 d[X](t) \right] < \infty \right\},$$

where
Chapter 2. FUNCTIONAL ITÔ CALCULUS

endowed with the norm \( \| \phi \|_{\mathcal{L}^2(X)} := \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P} \left[ \int_0^T |\phi(t)|^2 d[X](t) \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \), such that

\[
Y(T) = Y(0) + \int_0^T \nabla_X Y(t) \cdot dX(t) \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}
\]

This is used in [22] to extend the domain of the vertical derivative operator \( \nabla_X \) to the space of square-integrable \( \mathbb{F} \)-martingales \( \mathcal{M}^2(X) \), by a density argument.

On the space of smooth square-integrable martingales, \( \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_b(X) \cap \mathcal{M}^2(X) \), which is dense in \( \mathcal{M}^2(X) \), an integration-by-parts formula holds: for any \( Y, Z \in \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_b(X) \cap \mathcal{M}^2(X) \),

\[
\mathbb{E}[Y(T)Z(T)] = \mathbb{E} \left[ \int_0^T Y(T)Z(t) d[X](t) \right].
\]

By this and by density of \( \{ \nabla_X Y, Y \in \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_\text{loc}(X) \} \) in \( \mathcal{L}^2(X) \), the extension of the vertical derivative operator follows.

**Theorem 2.3** (Theorem 5.9 in [22]). The operator \( \nabla_X : \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_b(X) \cap \mathcal{M}^2(X) \to \mathcal{L}^2(X) \) admits a closure in \( \mathcal{M}^2(X) \). Its closure is a bijective isometry

\[
\nabla_X : \mathcal{M}^2(X) \to \mathcal{L}^2(X), \quad \int_0^T \phi(t) dX(t) \mapsto \phi,
\]

characterized by the property that, for any \( Y \in \mathcal{M}^2(X) \), \( \nabla_X Y \) is the unique element of \( \mathcal{L}^2(X) \) such that

\[
\forall Z \in \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_b(X) \cap \mathcal{M}^2(X), \quad \mathbb{E}[Y(T)Z(T)] = \mathbb{E} \left[ \int_0^T \nabla_X Y(t) \nabla_X Z(t) d[X](t) \right].
\]

In particular \( \nabla_X \) is the adjoint of the Itô stochastic integral

\[
I_X : \mathcal{L}^2(X) \to \mathcal{M}^2(X), \quad \phi \mapsto \int_0^T \phi(t) \cdot dX(t),
\]

in the following sense: for all \( \phi \in \mathcal{L}^2(X) \) and for all \( Y \in \mathcal{M}^2(X) \),

\[
\mathbb{E} \left[ Y(T) \int_0^T \phi(t) \cdot dX(t) \right] = \mathbb{E} \left[ \int_0^T \nabla_X Y(T)\phi(t) d[X](t) \right].
\]
2.2. Weak functional calculus

Thus, for any square-integrable $\mathbb{F}$-martingale $Y$, the following martingale representation formula holds:

$$Y(T) = Y(0) + \int_0^T \nabla_X Y(t) \cdot dX(t), \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.} \quad (2.6)$$

Then, denote by $A^2(\mathbb{F})$ the space of $\mathbb{F}$-predictable absolutely continuous processes $H = H(0) + \int_0^T h(u) du$ with finite variation, such that

$$\|H\|_{A^2}^2 := \mathbb{E}^P \left[ |H(0)|^2 + \int_0^T |h(u)|^2 du \right] < \infty$$

and by $S^{1,2}(X)$ the space of square-integrable $\mathbb{F}\mathbb{F}$-adapted special semimartingales, $S^{1,2}(X) = \mathcal{M}^2(X) \oplus A^2(\mathbb{F})$, equipped with the norm $\|\cdot\|_{1,2}$ defined by

$$\|S\|_{1,2}^2 := \mathbb{E}^P \left[ |[M](T)| \right] + \|H\|_{A^2}^2, \quad S \in S^{1,2}(X),$$

where $S = M + H$ is the unique decomposition of $S$ such that $M \in \mathcal{M}^2(X)$, $M(0) = 0$ and $H \in A^2(\mathbb{F})$, $H(0) = S(0)$.

The vertical derivative operator admits a unique continuous extension to $S^{1,2}(X)$ such that its restriction to $\mathcal{M}^2(X)$ coincides with the bijective isometry in (2.5) and it is null if restricted to $A^2(\mathbb{F})$.

By iterating this construction it is possible to define a series of ‘Sobolev’ spaces $S^{k,2}(X)$ on which the vertical derivative of order $k$, $\nabla^{k}_X$ is defined as a continuous operator. We restrict our attention to the space of order 2:

$$S^{2,2}(X) := \{Y \in S^{1,2}(X) : \nabla_X Y \in S^{1,2}(X)\},$$

equipped with the norm $\|\cdot\|_{2,2}^2$ defined by

$$\|Y\|_{2,2}^2 = \|H\|_{A^2}^2 + \|\nabla_X Y\|_{L^2(X)}^2 + \|\nabla^2_X Y\|_{L^2(X)}^2, \quad Y \in S^{2,2}(X).$$

Note that the second vertical derivative of a process $Y \in S^{2,2}(X)$ has values in $\mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d$ but it needs not be a symmetric matrix, differently from the (pathwise) second vertical derivative of a smooth functional $F \in \mathcal{C}_b^{1,2}(\Lambda_T)$.

The power of this construction is that it is very general, e.g. it applies to functionals with no regularity, and it makes possible to derive a ‘weak
Chapter 2. FUNCTIONAL ITÔ CALCULUS

functional Itô formula’ involving vertical derivatives of square-integrable processes and a weak horizontal derivative defined as follow. For any \( S \in S_{\text{st}}^2(X) \), the weak horizontal derivative of \( S \) is the unique \( \mathbb{F} \)-adapted process \( D_{S} \) such that: for all \( t \in [0,T] \)
\[
\int_{0}^{t} D_{S}(u)du = S(t) - S(0) - \int_{0}^{t} \nabla X S dX - \frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} \text{tr}(\nabla_{X}^{2} S(u)d[X](u))
\]
and \( \mathbb{E}^{P}\left[\int_{0}^{T} |D_{S}(t)|^{2} dt\right] < \infty. \)

**Proposition 2.3** (Proposition 4.18 in [19]). For any \( S \in S_{\text{st}}^2(X) \), the following ‘weak functional Itô formula’ holds \( dt \times dP \)-almost everywhere:
\[
S(t) = S(0) + \int_{0}^{t} \nabla X S dX + \frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} \text{tr}(\nabla_{X}^{2} S d[X]) + \int_{0}^{t} D_{S}(u)du. \tag{2.8}
\]

### 2.3 Functional Kolmogorov equations

Another important result in [19] is the characterization of smooth harmonic functionals as solutions of functional Kolmogorov equations. Specifically, a non-anticipative functional \( F : \Lambda_{T} \to \mathbb{R} \) is called \( \mathbb{P} \)-harmonic if \( F(\cdot, X) \) is a \( \mathbb{P} \)-local martingale, where \( X \) is the unique weak solution to the path-dependent stochastic differential equation
\[
dX(t) = b(t,X_{t})dt + \sigma(t,X_{t})dW(t), \quad X(0) = X_{0},
\]
where \( b, \sigma \) are non-anticipative functionals with enough regularity and \( W \) is a \( d \)-dimensional Brownian motion on \( (D([0,T],\mathbb{R}^{d}),\mathcal{F}_{T},\mathbb{P}) \).

**Proposition 2.4** (Theorem 5.6 in [19]). If \( F \in C_{b}^{1,2}(\mathcal{W}_{T}) \), \( DF \in C_{l}^{0,0}(\mathcal{W}_{T}) \), then \( F \) is a \( \mathbb{P} \)-harmonic functional if and only if it satisfies
\[
DF(t, \omega_{t}) + b(t, \omega_{t})\nabla_{\omega} F(t, \omega_{t}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\nabla_{\omega}^{2} F(t, \omega_{t})\sigma(t, \omega_{t})\sigma(t, \omega_{t})) = 0 \tag{2.9}
\]
for all \( t \in [0,T] \) and all \( \omega \in \text{supp}(X) \), where
\[
\text{supp}(X) := \left\{ \omega \in C([0,T],\mathbb{R}^{d}) : \mathbb{P}(X_{T} \in V) > 0 \right\},
\]
\[
\forall \text{ neighborhood } V \text{ of } \omega \text{ in } (C([0,T],\mathbb{R}^{d}),\|\cdot\|_{\infty}) \right\},
\]
is the topological support of \( (X, \mathbb{P}) \) in \( (C([0,T],\mathbb{R}^{d}),\|\cdot\|_{\infty}) \).
2.3. Functional Kolmogorov equations

Analogously to classical finite-dimensional parabolic PDEs, we can introduce the notions of sub-solution and super-solution of the functional (or path-dependent) PDE (2.9), for which [19] proved a comparison principle allowing to state uniqueness of solutions.

**Definition 2.4.** $F \in C^{1,2}(\Lambda_T)$ is called a sub-solution (respectively super-solution) of (2.9) on a domain $U \subset \Lambda_T$ if, for all $(t, \omega) \in U$,

$$DF(t, \omega) + b(t, \omega)\nabla \omega F(t, \omega) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \sigma(t, \omega_1)\sigma(t, \omega_1) \right) \geq 0 \quad (2.11)$$

(resp. $DF(t, \omega) + b(t, \omega)\nabla \omega F(t, \omega) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \sigma(t, \omega_1)\sigma(t, \omega_1) \right) \leq 0$).

**Theorem 2.5** (Comparison principle (Theorem 5.11 in [19])). Let $F, \overline{F} \in C^{1,2}(\Lambda_T)$ be respectively a sub-solution and a super-solution of (2.9), such that

$$\forall \omega \in C([0, T, \mathbb{R}^d], \quad F(T, \omega) \leq \overline{F}(T, \omega),$$

$$\mathbb{E}^p \left[ \sup_{t \in [0, T]} |F(t, X_t) - \overline{F}(t, X_t)| \right] < \infty.$$

Then,

$$\forall t \in [0, T), \forall \omega \in \text{supp}(X), \quad F(t, X_t) \leq \overline{F}(t, X_t).$$

This leads to a uniqueness result on the topological support of $X$ for $\mathbb{P}$-uniformly integrable solutions of the functional Kolmogorov equation.

**Theorem 2.6** (Uniqueness of solutions (Theorem 5.12 in [19])). Let $H : (C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), ||\cdot||_\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ be continuous and let $F^1, F^2 \in C^{1,2}_b(\Lambda_T)$ be solutions of (2.9) verifying

$$\forall \omega \in C([0, T, \mathbb{R}^d), \quad F^1(T, \omega) = F^2(T, \omega) = H(\omega_T),$$

$$\mathbb{E}^p \left[ \sup_{t \in [0, T]} |F^1(t, X_t) - F^2(t, X_t)| \right] < \infty.$$

Then:

$$\forall (t, \omega) \in [0, T] \times \text{supp}(X), \quad F^1(t, \omega) = F^2(t, \omega).$$

The uniqueness result, together with the representation of $\mathbb{P}$-harmonic functionals as solutions of a functional Kolmogorov equation, leads to a Feynman-Kac formula for non-anticipative functionals.
Theorem 2.7 (Feynman-Kac, path-dependent (Theorem 5.13 in [10])). Let $H : (C([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d), \|\cdot\|_{\infty}) \to \mathbb{R}$ be continuous and let $F \in C^{1,2}_b(\Lambda_T)$ be a solution of (2.9) verifying $F(T,\omega) = H(\omega_T)$ for all $\omega \in C([0,T,\mathbb{R}^d]$ and $\mathbb{E}^P \left[ \sup_{t \in [0,T]} |F(t, X_t)| \right] < \infty$. Then:

$$F(t, \omega) = \mathbb{E}^P[H(X_T) | \mathcal{F}_t] \ d t \times d\mathbb{P}-a.s.$$

### 2.3.1 Universal pricing and hedging equations

Straightforward applications to the pricing and hedging of path-dependent derivatives then follow from the representation of $\mathbb{P}$-harmonic functionals.

Now we consider the point of view of a market agent and we suppose that the asset price process $S$ is modeled as the coordinate process on the path space $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$, and it is a square-integrable martingale under a pricing measure $\mathbb{P}$,

$$dS(t) = \sigma(t, S_t)dW(t).$$

Let $H : D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d) \to \mathbb{R}$ be the payoff functional of a path-dependent derivative that the agent wants to sell. The price of such derivative at time $t$ is computed as

$$Y(t) = \mathbb{E}^P[H(S_T) \mid \mathcal{F}_t].$$

The following proposition is a direct corollary of Proposition 2.2.

**Proposition 2.5** (Universal hedging formula). If $\mathbb{E}^P \left[ |H(S_T)|^2 \right] < \infty$ and if the price process has a smooth functional representation of $S$, that is $Y \in \mathcal{C}^{1,2}_{loc}(S)$, then:

$$\mathbb{P}-a.s. \quad H = \mathbb{E}^P[H(S_T) \mid \mathcal{F}_t] + \int_t^T \nabla S Y(u) \cdot dS$$

$$= \mathbb{E}^P[H(S_T) \mid \mathcal{F}_t] + \int_t^T \nabla \omega F(u, S_u) \cdot dS,$$

where $Y(t) = F(t, S_t) \ dt \times d\mathbb{P}$-almost everywhere and $\nabla \omega F(\cdot, S_s)$ is the unique (up to indistinguishable processes) asset position process of the hedging strategy for $H$.  

We refer to the equation (2.13) as the ‘universal hedging formula’, because it gives an explicit representation of the hedging strategy for a path-dependent option $H$. The only dependence on the model lies in the computation of the price $Y$.

**Remark 2.8.** If the price process does not have a smooth functional representation of $S$, but the payoff functional still satisfies $\mathbb{E}^P [ |H(S_T)|^2 ] < \infty$, then the equation (2.12) still holds.

In this case, the hedging strategy is not given explicitly, being the vertical derivative of a square-integrable martingale, but it can be uniformly approximated by regular functionals that are the vertical derivatives of smooth non-anticipative functionals. Namely: there exists a sequence of smooth functionals

$$\{ F^n \in C_b^{1,2}(\Lambda_T), F^n(\cdot, S_\cdot) \in \mathcal{M}^2(S), \| F^n(\cdot, S_\cdot) \|_2 < \infty \}_{n \geq 1},$$

where

$$\| Y \|_2 := \mathbb{E}^P [ |Y(T)|^2 ]^{\frac{1}{2}} < \infty, \quad Y \in \mathcal{M}^2(S),$$

such that

$$\| F^n(\cdot, S_\cdot) - Y \|_2 \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \| \nabla S Y - \nabla S F^n(\cdot, S_\cdot) \|_{L^2(S)} \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0.$$  

For example, Cont and Yi [23] compute an explicit approximation for the integrand in the representation (2.12), which cannot be itself computed through pathwise perturbations. They allow the underlying process $X$ to be the strong solution of a path-dependent stochastic differential equation with non-anticipative Lipschitz-continuous and non-degenerate coefficients, then they consider the Euler-Maruyama scheme of such SDE. They proved the strong convergence of the Euler-Maruyama approximation to the original process. By assuming that the payoff functional $H : (D([0,T], \mathbb{R}^d), \| \cdot \|_\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is continuous with polynomial growth, they are able to define a sequence $\{ F_n \}_{n \geq 1}$ of smooth functionals $F_n \in C^{1,\infty}(\Lambda_T)$ that approximate the pricing functional and provide thus a smooth functional approximation sequence $\{ \nabla \omega F_n(\cdot, S_\cdot) \}_{n \geq 1}$ for the hedging process $\nabla S Y$. 

Another application is derived from Proposition 2.4 for the pricing of path-dependent derivatives.

**Proposition 2.6** (Universal pricing equation). If there exists a smooth functional representation of the price process $Y$ for $H$, i.e.

$$\exists F \in C^{1,2}(\mathcal{W}_T) : \quad F(t, S_t) = \mathbb{E}^P[H(S_T)|\mathcal{F}_t] \quad dt \times d\mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.},$$

such that $DF \in C^{0,0}_t$, then the following path-dependent partial differential equation holds on the topological support of $S$ in $(C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \|\cdot\|_{\infty})$ for all $t \in [0, T]$:

$$DF(t, \omega_t) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega_t) \sigma(t, \omega_t) \sigma(t, \omega_t)^T \right) = 0. \quad (2.14)$$

**Remark 2.9.** If there exists a smooth functional representation of the price process $Y$ for $H$, but the horizontal derivative is not left-continuous, then the pricing equation (2.14) cannot hold on the whole topological support of $S$ in $(C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d), \|\cdot\|_{\infty})$, but it still holds for $\mathbb{P}$-almost every $\omega \in C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$.

### 2.4 Path-dependent PDEs and BSDEs

In the Markovian setting, there is a well-known relation between backward stochastic differential equations (BSDEs) and semi-linear parabolic PDEs, via the so-called nonlinear Feynman-Kac formula introduced by Pardoux and Peng [84] (see also Pardoux and Peng [83] for the introduction to BSDEs and El Karoui et al. [42] for a comprehensive guide on BSDEs and their application in finance). This relation can be extended to a non-Markovian setting using the functional Itô calculus.

Consider the following forward-backward stochastic differential equation (FBSDE) with path-dependent coefficients:

$$X(t) = x + \int_0^t b(u, X_u) du + \int_0^t \sigma(u, X_u) \cdot dW(u) \quad (2.15)$$

$$Y(t) = H(X_T) + \int_t^T f(u, X_u, Y(u), Z(u)) du - \int_t^T Z(u) \cdot dX(u) \quad (2.16)$$
where $W$ is a $d$-dimensional Brownian motion on $(D([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d),\mathbb{P})$, $\mathbb{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t\in[0,T]}$ is the $\mathbb{P}$-augmented natural filtration of the coordinate process $X$, the terminal value is a square-integrable $\mathcal{F}_T$-adapted random variable, i.e. $H \in L^2(\Omega,\mathcal{F}_T,\mathbb{P})$, and the coefficients

$$b : \mathcal{W}_T \to \mathbb{R}^d, \quad \sigma : \mathcal{W}_T \to \mathbb{R}^{d\times d}, \quad f : \mathcal{W}_T \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}$$

are assumed to satisfy the standard assumptions that guarantee that the process $M_t = \int_0^t \sigma(u,X_u) \cdot dW(u)$ is a square-integrable martingale, and the forward equation $(2.15)$ has a unique strong solution $X$ satisfying $E^P[\sup_{t\in[0,T]}|X(t)|^2] < \infty$. Moreover, assuming also $\det(\sigma(t,X_{t-},X(t))) \neq 0 \ dt \times d\mathbb{P}$-almost surely, they guarantee that the FBSDE $(2.15)-(2.16)$ has a unique solution $(Y,Z) \in S^{1,2}(M) \times \Lambda^2(M)$ such that $E^P[\sup_{t\in[0,T]}|Y(t)|^2] < \infty$ and $Z = \nabla_M Y$.

The following is the extension of the non-linear Feynman-Kac formula of [84] to the non-Markovian setting.

**Theorem 2.10** (Theorem 5.14 in [19]). Let $F \in C^{1,2}_{\text{loc}}(\mathcal{W}_T)$ be a solution of the path-dependent PDE

$$\begin{cases}
DF(t,\omega) + f(t,\omega,F(t,\omega)\nabla_\omega F(t,\omega)) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\sigma(t,\omega)\sigma(t,\omega)\nabla^2_\omega F(t,\omega)) = 0 \\
F(T,\omega) = H(\omega_T)
\end{cases}$$

for $(t,\omega) \in [0,T] \times \text{supp}(X)$. Then, the pair $(Y,Z) = (F(\cdot,X),\nabla_\omega F(\cdot,X))$ solves the FBSDE $(2.15)-(2.16)$.

Together with the standard comparison theorem for BSDEs, Theorem 2.10 provides a comparison principle for functional Kolmogorov equations and uniqueness of the solution.

To prove existence of a solution to $(2.17)$, additional regularity of the coefficients is needed. A result in this direction is provided by Peng [87], using BSDEs where the forward process is a Brownian motion. Peng [87] considers the following backward stochastic differential equation:

$$Y^{(t,\gamma)}(s) = H(W^{(t,\gamma)}_T) + \int_s^T f(W^{(t,\gamma)}_u,Y^{(t,\gamma)}(u),Z^{(t,\gamma)}(u))du - \int_s^T Z^{(t,\gamma)}(u)dW(u),$$

(2.17)
where $W$ is the coordinate process on the Wiener space $(C([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d),\mathbb{P})$ and, for all $(t,\gamma) \in \Lambda_T$, $W^{(t,\gamma)} = \gamma \mathbb{1}_{[0,t]} + (\gamma(t) + W - W(t)) \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]}$. Note that the notation has been rearranged to be consistent with the presentation in this thesis.

The BSDE (2.17) has a unique solution $(Y^{(t,\gamma)},Z^{(t,\gamma)}) \in S^2([t,T]) \times M^2([t,T])$, where $M^2([t,T])$ and $S^2([t,T])$ denote respectively the space of $\mathbb{R}^m$-valued processes $X$ such that $X \in L^2([t,T] \times \Omega, dt \times d\mathbb{P})$ and $\mathbb{R}^{m \times d}$-valued processes $X$ such that $\mathbb{E}[\sup_{u\in [t,T]} |X(u)|^2] < \infty$, both adapted to the completion of the filtration generated by $\{W(u) - W(t), u \in [t,T]\}$, under the following assumptions on the coefficients:

1. $H : \Lambda_T \to \mathbb{R}^m$ satisfies
   
   (a) $\psi^{(t,\gamma)} : \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}^m, e \mapsto H(\gamma + e \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]})$ is twice differentiable in $0$ for all $(t,\gamma) \in [0,T] \times D([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d)$,

   (b) $|H(\gamma) - H(\gamma')| \leq C(1 + \|\gamma_T\|_\infty^k + \|\gamma'_T\|_\infty^k) \|\gamma_T - \gamma'_T\|_\infty$ for all $\gamma,\gamma' \in D([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d)$,

   (c) $\partial^j_t \psi^{(t,\gamma)}(0) - \partial^j_t \psi^{(t',\gamma')}(0) \leq C(1 + \|\gamma_T\|_\infty^k + \|\gamma'_T\|_\infty^k)(|t - t'| + \|\gamma_T - \gamma'_T\|_\infty)$ for all $\gamma,\gamma' \in D([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d)$, $t,t' \in [0,T]$, $j = 1,2$;

2. $f : \Lambda_T \times \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}^{m \times d} \to \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous; for any $(t,\gamma) \in \Lambda_T$ and $s \in [0,t]$ $(x,y,z) \mapsto f(t,\gamma + s \mathbb{1}_{[s,T]},y,z)$ is of class $C^3(\mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}^{m \times d},\mathbb{R}^m)$ with first-order partial derivatives and second-order partial derivatives with respect to $(y,z)$ uniformly bounded, and all partial derivatives up to order three growing at most as a polynomial at infinity; for any $(t,y,z)$, $\gamma \mapsto f(t,\gamma, y,z)$ satisfies assumptions 1(a),1(b),1(c) replacing $H$ with $f(t,\gamma, y,z)$, $\gamma \mapsto \partial_y f(t,\gamma, y,z), \partial_z f(t,\gamma, y,z)$ satisfy assumptions 1(a),1(b) and 1(c) with only $j = 1$, and

   $\gamma \mapsto \partial_{yy}f(t,\gamma, y,z), \partial_{zz}f(t,\gamma, y,z), \partial_{yz}f(t,\gamma, y,z)$

satisfy the assumptions 1(a),1(b).
The functional Kolmogorov equation associated is the following: for all $\gamma \in D([0,T],\mathbb{R}^d)$ and $t \in [0,T]$,

$$
\begin{cases}
DF(t,\gamma_t) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\nabla^2 \omega F(t,\gamma_t)) + f(t,\gamma_t, F(t,\gamma_t), \nabla \omega F(t,\gamma_t)) = 0,

F(T,\gamma_T) = H(\gamma_T)
\end{cases}
$$

First, by the functional Itô formula, they obtain the analogue of Theorem 2.10, then they prove the converse result: the non-anticipative functional $F$ defined by $F(t,\gamma) = Y(t,\gamma_t)(t)$ is the unique $C^{1,2}(\Lambda_T)$-solution of the functional Kolmogorov equation (2.18). This significant result is achieved based on the theory of BSDEs.

Another approach to study the connection between PDEs and SDEs in the path-dependent case is provided by Flandoli and Zanco [45], who reformulate the problem into an infinite-dimensional setting on Banach spaces, where solutions of the SDE are intended in the mild sense and the Kolmogorov equations are defined appropriately. However, in the infinite-dimensional framework, the regularity requirements are very strong, involving at least Fréchet differentiability.

### 2.4.1 Weak and viscosity solutions of path-dependent PDEs

The results seen above in Section 2.3 require a regularity that is often difficult to prove and classical solutions of the above path-dependent PDEs may fail to exist. To find a way around this issue, more general notions of solution have been proposed, analogously to the Markovian case where weak solutions of PDEs are considered or viscosity solutions are used to link solutions of BSDEs to the associated PDE.

Cont [19] proposed the following notion of weak solution, using the weak functional Itô calculus presented in Section 2.2 and generalizing Proposition 2.4.

Consider the stochastic differential equation (2.15) with path-dependent
coefficients such that $X$ is the unique strong solution and $M$ is a square-integrable martingale.

Denote by $\mathbb{W}^{1,2}(\mathbb{P})$ the Sobolev space of $dt \times d\mathbb{P}$-equivalence classes of non-anticipative functionals $F : \Lambda_T \to \mathbb{R}$ such that the process $S = F(\cdot, X.)$ belongs to $\mathcal{S}^{1,2}(M)$, equipped with the norm $\| \cdot \|_{\mathbb{W}^{1,2}}$ defined by

$$\|F\|_{\mathbb{W}^{1,2}} := \|F(\cdot, X.)\|_{1,2}^2$$

$$= \mathbb{E}^P \left[ |F(0, X_0)|^2 + \int_0^T \text{tr}(\nabla_M F(t, X_t) \nabla_M F(t, X_t) d[M](t)) + \int_0^T |v(t)|^2 dt \right],$$

where $F(t, X_t) = V(t) + \int_0^t \nabla_M S dM$ and $V(t) = S(0) + \int_0^t v(u) du$, $V \in A^2(\mathbb{P})$. Equivalently, $\mathbb{W}^{1,2}(\mathbb{P})$ can be defined as the completion of $(C_b^1(\Lambda_T), \| \cdot \|_{\mathbb{W}^{1,2}})$.

Note that, in general, it is not possible to define for $F \in \mathbb{W}^{1,2}(\mathbb{P})$ the $F$-adapted process $DF(\cdot, X.)$, because it requires $F \in \mathcal{S}^{2,2}(M)$. On the other hand, the finite-variation part of $S$ belongs to the Sobolev space $H^1([0, T])$, so the process $U$ defined by

$$U(t) := F(T, X_T) - F(t, X_t) - \int_t^T \nabla_M F(u, X_u) dM(u), \quad t \in [0, T],$$

has paths in $H^1([0, T])$, almost surely. By integration by parts, for all $\Phi \in A^2(\mathbb{P})$, $\Phi(t) = \int_0^t \phi(u)du$ for $t \in [0, T],$

$$\int_0^T \Phi(t) \frac{d}{dt} \left( F(t, X_t) - \int_0^t \nabla_M F(u, X_u) dM(u) \right) dt = \int_0^T \Phi(t) \left( \frac{d}{dt} U(t) \right) dt$$

$$= \int_0^T \phi(t) \left( F(T, X_T) - F(t, X_t) - \int_t^T \nabla_M F(u, X_u) dM(u) \right) dt.$$

Thus, the following notion of weak solution is well defined.

**Definition 2.11.** A non-anticipative functional $F \in \mathbb{W}^{1,2}(\mathbb{P})$ is called a weak solution of the path-dependent PDE (2.19) on $\text{supp}(X)$ with terminal condition $H(X_T) \in L^2(\Omega, \mathbb{P})$ if, for all $\phi \in L^2([0, T] \times \Omega, dt \times d\mathbb{P})$, it satisfies

$$\mathbb{E}^P \left[ \int_0^T \phi(t) \left( H(X_T) - F(t, X_t) - \int_t^T \nabla_M F(u, X_u) dM(u) \right) dt \right] = 0,$$

$$F(T, X_T) = H(X_T).$$

(2.19)
2.4. Path-dependent PDEs and BSDEs

Using the tools provided by the functional Itô calculus presented in this chapter, different notions of viscosity solutions have been recently proposed, depending on the path-dependent partial differential equation considered. Ekren et al. [38] proposed a notion of viscosity solution for semi-linear parabolic path-dependent PDEs that allows to extend the non-linear Feynman-Kac formula to non-Markovian case. Ekren et al. [39] generalizes the definition of viscosity solutions introduced in [38] to deal with fully non-linear path-dependent parabolic PDEs. Then, in [40] they prove a comparison result for such viscosity solutions that implies a well-posedness result. Cosso [26] extended the results of [40] to the case of a possibly degenerate diffusion coefficient for the forward process driving the BSDE.

We remark that, although these approaches are useful to study solutions of path-dependent PDEs from a theoretical point of view and in applications, the problem studied in this thesis cannot be faced by means of viscosity or weak solutions. This is due to the fact that the change of variable formula for non-anticipative functionals and the pathwise definition of the Föllmer integral are the key tools that allow us to achieve the robustness results, and they require smoothness ($C^{1,2}$ regularity) of the portfolio value functionals.
Chapter 3

A pathwise approach to continuous-time trading

The Itô theory of stochastic integration defines the integral of a general non-anticipative integrand as either an $L^2$ limit or a limit in probability of non-anticipative Riemann sums. The resulting integral is therefore defined almost-surely but does not have a well-defined value along a given sample path. If one interprets such an integral as the gain of a strategy, this poses a problem for interpretation: the gain cannot necessarily be defined for a given scenario, which does not make sense financially. It is therefore important to dispose of a construction which allows to give a meaning to such integrals in a pathwise sense.

In this Chapter, after reviewing in Section 3.1 various approaches proposed in the literature for the pathwise construction of integrals with respect to stochastic processes, we present an analytical setting where the pathwise computation of the gain from trading is possible for a class of continuous-time trading strategies which includes in particular ‘delta-hedging’ strategies. This construction also allows for a pathwise definition of the self-financing property.
3.1 Pathwise integration and model-free arbitrage

3.1.1 Pathwise construction of stochastic integrals

A first attempt to a pathwise construction of the stochastic integral deals with Brownian integrals and dates back to the sixties, due to Wong and Zakai\cite{109}. They stated that, for a restricted class of integrands, the sequence of Riemann-Stieltjes integrals obtained by replacing the Brownian motion with a sequence of approximating smooth integrators converges in mean square (hence pathwise along a properly chosen subsequence) to a Stratonovich integral. This approach is based on approximating the integrator process.

In 1981, Bichteler\cite{10} obtained almost-sure convergent subsequences by using stopping times. Namely, given a càglàd process $\phi$ and a sequence of non-negative real numbers $(c_n)_{n\geq 0}$ such that $\sum_{n\geq 0} c_n < \infty$, by defining for each $n \geq 0$ a sequence of stopping times $T^n_0 = 0$, $T^n_{k+1} = \inf\{t > T^n_k : |\phi(t) - \phi(T^n_k)| > c_n\}$, $k \geq 0$, for a certain class of integrands $M$ (more general than square-integrable martingales) the following holds: for almost all states $\omega \in \Omega$, $(\int \phi dM)(\omega)$ is the uniform limit on every bounded interval of the pathwise integrals $(\int \phi^n dM)(\omega)$ of the approximating elementary processes $\phi^n(t) = \sum_{k\geq 0} \phi(T^n_k) 1_{(T^n_k,T^n_{k+1})}(t)$, $t \geq 0$. Though Bichteler’s method is constructive, it involves stopping times. Moreover, note that the $\mathbb{P}$-null set outside of which convergence does not hold depends on $\phi$.

Pathwise stochastic integration by means of “skeleton approximations”

In 1989, Willinger and Taqqu\cite{108} proposed a constructive method to compute stochastic integrals path-by-path by making both time and the probability space discrete. The discrete and finite case contains the main idea of their approach and shows the connection between the completeness property, i.e. the martingale representation property, and stochastic inte-
3.1. Pathwise integration and model-free arbitrage

gration. It is given a probability space \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})\) endowed with a filtration \(\mathbb{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t=0,1,\ldots,T}\) generated by minimal partitions of \(\Omega\), \(\mathcal{F}_t = \sigma(P_t)\) for all \(t = 0, 1, \ldots, T\), and an \(\mathbb{R}^{d+1}\)-valued \((\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P})\)-martingale \(Z = (Z(t))_{t=0,1,\ldots,T}\) with components \(Z^0 \equiv 1\) and \(Z^1(0) = \ldots = Z^d(0) = 0\). They denote by \(\Phi\) the space of all \(\mathbb{R}^{d+1}\)-valued \((\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P})\)-predictable stochastic processes \(\phi = (\phi(t))_{t=0,1,\ldots,T}\), where \(\phi(t)\) is \(\mathcal{F}_{t-1}\)-measurable \(\forall t = 1, \ldots, T\), and such that

\[
\phi(t) \cdot Z(t) = \phi(t+1) \cdot Z(t) \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s., } t = 0, 1, \ldots, T,
\]

where by definition \(\phi_0 \equiv \phi_1\). Property (3.1) has an interpretation in the context of discrete financial markets as the self-financing condition for a strategy \(\phi\) trading the assets \(Z\), in the sense that at each trading date the investor rebalances his portfolio without neither withdrawing nor paying any cash. Moreover, it implies

\[
(\phi \cdot Z)(t) := \phi(1) \cdot Z(0) + \sum_{s=1}^{t} \phi(s) \cdot (Z(s) - Z(s-1)) = \phi(t) \cdot Z(t) \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s., } t = 0, 1, \ldots, T,
\]

where \(\phi \cdot Z\) is the discrete stochastic integral of the predictable process \(\phi\) with respect to \(Z\). The last equation is still meaningful in financial terms, having on the left-hand side the initial investment plus the accumulated gain and on the right-hand side the current value of the portfolio. The \(\mathbb{R}^{d+1}\)-valued \((\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P})\)-martingale \(Z\) is defined to be complete if for every real random variable \(Y \in L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})\) there exists \(\phi \in \Phi\) such that for \(\mathbb{P}\)-almost all \(\omega \in \Omega\), \(Y(\omega) = (\phi \cdot Z)(T, \omega)\), i.e.

\[
\{\phi \cdot Z, \ \phi \in \Phi\} = L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P}).
\]

The \((Z, \Phi)\)-representation problem (3.2) is reduced to a duality structure between the completeness of \(Z\) and the uniqueness of an equivalent martingale measure for \(Z\), which are furthermore proved (Taqqu and Willinger [102]) to be equivalent to a technical condition on the flow of information and the dynamics of \(Z\), that is: \(\forall t = 1, \ldots, T\), \(A \in \mathcal{P}_{t-1},\)

\[
\dim (\text{span} \{(Z(t, \omega) - Z(t-1, \omega), \omega \in A)\}) = \sharp\{A' \subset \mathcal{P}_t : A' \subset A\} - 1.
\]
Chapter 3. PATHWISE CONTINUOUS-TIME TRADING

The discrete-time construction extends then to stochastic integrals of continuous martingales, by using a “skeleton approach”. The probability space \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})\) is now assumed to be complete and endowed with a filtration \(\mathbb{F}^Z = \mathbb{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0,T]}\), where \(Z = (Z(t))_{t \in [0,T]}\) denotes an \(\mathbb{R}^{d+1}\)-valued continuous \(\mathbb{P}\)-martingale with the components \(Z^0 \equiv 1\) and \(Z^d(0) = \ldots = Z^d(0) = 0\) \(\mathbb{P}\)-a.s. and \(\mathbb{F}\) satisfies the usual condition and is continuous in the sense that, for all measurable set \(B \in \mathcal{F}\), the \((\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P})\)-martingale \((\mathbb{P}(B|\mathcal{F}_t))_{t \in [0,T]}\) has a continuous modification. The key notion of the skeleton approach is the following.

**Definition 3.1.** A triplet \((I^\zeta, \mathcal{F}^\zeta, \zeta)\) is a continuous-time skeleton of \((\mathbb{F}, Z)\) if:

(i) \(I^\zeta\) is a finite partition \(0 = t^\zeta_0 < \ldots < t^\zeta_N =: T^\zeta \leq T\);

(ii) for all \(t \in [0, T]\), \(\mathcal{F}^\zeta_t = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \mathcal{F}^\zeta_{t^\zeta_k} 1_{[t^\zeta_k, t^\zeta_{k+1})}(t)\), such that for all \(k = 0, \ldots, N\), there exists a minimal partition of \(\Omega\) which generates the sub-\(\sigma\)-algebra \(\mathcal{F}^\zeta_{t^\zeta_k}\);

(iii) for all \(t \in [0, T]\), \(\zeta(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \zeta^\zeta_k 1_{(t^\zeta_k, t^\zeta_{k+1})}(t)\) where \(\zeta^\zeta_k\) is \(\mathcal{F}^\zeta_{t^\zeta_k}\)-measurable for all \(k = 0, \ldots, N\).

Given an \(\mathbb{R}^{d+1}\)-valued stochastic process \(\nu = (\nu(t))_{t \in [0,T]}\) and \(I^\nu, \mathcal{F}^\nu\) satisfying (i),(ii), \((I^\nu, \mathcal{F}^\nu, \nu)\) is called a \(\mathbb{F}^\nu\)-predictable (continuous-time) skeleton if, for all \(t \in [0, T]\), \(\nu(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{N} \nu^\nu_k 1_{(t^\nu_{k-1}, t^\nu_k)}(t)\) where \(\nu^\nu_k\) is \(\mathcal{F}^\nu_{t^\nu_k}\)-measurable for all \(k = 1, \ldots, N\).

A sequence of continuous-time skeletons \((I^n, \mathcal{F}^n, \zeta^n)_{n \geq 0}\) is then called a continuous-time skeleton approximation of \((\mathbb{F}, Z)\) if the sequence of time partitions \((I^n)_{n \geq 0} = \{0 = t^n_0 < \ldots < t^n_{N^n} =: T^n \leq T\}_{n \geq 0}\) has mesh going to 0 as \(n \to \infty\), the skeleton filtrations \(\mathcal{F}^n\) converge to \(\mathbb{F}\) in the sense that, for each \(t \in [0, T]\),

\[ \mathcal{F}^0_t \subset \cdots \subset \mathcal{F}^{n-1}_t \subset \mathcal{F}^n_t \subset \sigma\left( \bigcup_{k \geq 0} \mathcal{F}^k_{t^k} \right) = \mathcal{F}_t \]

and the skeleton processes \(\zeta^n\) converge to \(Z\) uniformly in time, as \(n \to \infty\), \(\mathbb{P}\)-a.s.
3.1. Pathwise integration and model-free arbitrage

Given $\bar{Y} \in L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$ and considered the $(\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P})$-martingale $Y = (Y(t))_{t \in [0,T]}$, $Y(t) = \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P}[\bar{Y} | \mathcal{F}_t] \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$, the pathwise construction of stochastic integrals with respect to $Z$ runs as follows.

1. Choose a complete continuous-time skeleton approximation $(I^n, \mathbb{F}^n, \zeta^n)_{n \geq 0}$ of $(\mathbb{F}, Z)$ such that, defined $Y^n = (Y^n(t) = \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P}[\bar{Y} | \mathcal{F}^n_t] \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.})_{t \in [0,T^n]}$ for all $n \geq 0$, the sequence $(I^n, \mathbb{F}^n, Y^n)_{n \geq 0}$ defines a continuous-time skeleton approximation of $(\mathbb{F}, Y)$.

2. Thanks to the completeness characterization in discrete time, for each $n \geq 0$, there exists an $\mathbb{F}^n$-predictable skeleton $(I^n, \mathbb{F}^n, \phi^n)$ such that

$$\phi^n(t^n_k) \cdot \zeta^n(t^n_k) = \phi^n(t^n_{k+1}) \cdot \zeta^n(t^n_k) \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s., } k = 0, 1, \ldots, N^n,$$

and

$$Y^n = (\phi^n \cdot \zeta^n)(T^n) = \phi^n(T^n) \cdot \zeta^n(T^n) \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

3. Define the pathwise integral

$$\int_0^t \phi(s, \omega) \cdot Z(s, \omega) := \lim_{n \to \infty} (\phi^n \cdot \zeta^n)(t, \omega), \quad t \in [0,T] \quad (3.4)$$

for $\mathbb{P}$-almost all $\omega \in \Omega$, namely on the set of scenarios $\omega$ where the discrete stochastic integrals converge uniformly.

Willinger and Taqqu applied their methodology to obtain a convergence theory in the context of models for continuous security market with exogenously given equilibrium prices. Thanks to the preservation of the martingale property and completeness and to the pathwise nature of their approximating scheme, they were able to characterize important features of continuous security models by convergence of “real life” economies, where trading occurs at discrete times. In particular, for a continuous security market model represented by a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$ and an $(\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P})$-martingale $Z$ on $[0,T]$, the notions of “no-arbitrage” and “self-financing” are understood through the existence of converging discrete market approximations $(T^n, \mathbb{F}^n, \zeta^n)$ which are all free of arbitrage opportunities (as $\zeta^n$ is...
Chapter 3. PATHWISE CONTINUOUS-TIME TRADING

an \((\mathbb{F}^n, \mathbb{P})\)-martingale) and complete. Moreover, the characterization \(^{5.3}\) of completeness in finite market models relates the structure of the skeleton filtrations \(\mathbb{F}^n\) to the number of non-redundant securities needed to complete the approximations \(\zeta^n\).

However, this construction lacks an appropriate convergence result of the sequence \((\phi^n)_{n \geq 0}\) to the predictable integrand \(\phi\); moreover it deals exclusively with a given martingale in the role of the integrator process, which restricts the spectrum of suitable financial models.

Continuous-time trading without probability

In 1994, Bick and Willinger \(^{11}\) looked at the current financial modeling issues from a new perspective: they provided an economic interpretation of Föllmer’s pathwise Itô calculus in the field of continuous-time trading models. Föllmer’s framework turns out to be of interest in finance, as it allows to avoid any probabilistic assumption on the dynamics of traded assets and consequently any resulting model risk. Reasonably, only observed price trajectories are needed. Bick and Willinger reduced the computation of the initial cost of a replicating trading strategy to an exercise of analysis. For a given stock price trajectory (state of the world), they showed one is able to compute the outcome of a given trading strategy, that is the gain from trading.

The set of possible stock price trajectories is taken to be the space of positive càdlàg functions, \(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+), \) and trading strategies are defined only based on the past price information.

They define a simple trading strategy to be a couple \((V_0, \phi)\) where \(V_0: \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}\) is a measurable function representing the initial investment depending only on the initial stock price and \(\phi: (0, T] \times D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+) \to \mathbb{R}\) is such that, for any trajectory \(S \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+)\), \(\phi(\cdot, S)\) is a càdlàg step-wise function on a time grid \(0 \equiv \tau_0(S) < \tau_1(S) < \ldots < \tau_m(S) \equiv T\), and satisfies the following ‘adaptation’ property: for all \(t \in (0, T]\), given \(S_1, S_2 \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+)\), if \(S_{1\mid[0,t]} = S_{2\mid[0,t]}\), then \(\phi(t+, S_1) = \phi(t+, S_2)\), where
\[ \phi(t+, \cdot) := \lim_{u \downarrow t} \phi(u, \cdot). \] The value \( \phi(t, S) \) represents the amount of shares of the stock held at time \( t \). They restrict the attention to self-financing portfolios of the stock and bond (always referring to their discounted prices), so that the number of bonds in the portfolio is described by the map \( \psi : (0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \),

\[ \psi(t) = V_0(S(0)) - \phi(0+, S)S(0) - \sum_{j=1}^{m} S(\tau_j \wedge t)(\phi(t_{j+1} \wedge t, S) - \phi(t_j \wedge t, S)). \]

The cumulative gain is denoted by

\[ G(t, S) = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \phi(t_j \wedge t, S)(S(t_j \wedge t) - S(t_{j-1} \wedge t)). \]

The self-financing assumption supplies us with the following well-known equation linking the gain to the value of the portfolio,

\[ V(t, S) := \psi(t) + \phi(t, S)S(t) = V_0(S(0)) + G(t, S), \quad (3.5) \]

and makes \( V \) be a càdlàg function in time.

Then, they define a general trading strategy to be a triple \((V_0, \phi, \Pi)\) where \( \phi(\cdot, S) \) is more generally a càdlàg function, satisfying the same ‘adaptation’ property and \( \Pi = (\pi_n(S))_{n \geq 1} \) is a sequence of partitions \( \pi_n \equiv \pi_n(S) = \{0 = \tau_0^n < \ldots < \tau_m^n = T\} \) whose mesh tends to 0 and such that \( \pi_n \cap [0, t] \) depends only on the price trajectory up to time \( t \). To any such triple is associated a sequence of simple trading strategies \( \{(V_0, \phi^n)\} \), where \( \phi^n(t, S) = \sum_{j=1}^{m^n} 1_{(\tau_j^n, \tau_{j+1}^n)}(\phi(\tau_j^n+, S), S) \), and for each \( n \geq 1 \) the correspondent numbers of bonds, cumulative gains and portfolio values are denoted respectively by \( \psi^n, G^n \) and \( V^n \). They define a notion of convergence for \( S \) of a general trading strategy \((V_0, \phi, \Pi)\) involving several conditions, that we simplify in the following:

1. \( \exists \lim_{n \to \infty} \psi^n(t, S) =: \psi(t, S) < \infty \) for all \( t \in (0, T] \);
2. \( \psi(\cdot, S) \) is a càdlàg function;
3. \( \psi(t+, S) - \psi(t, S) = -S(t)(\phi(t+, S) - \phi(t, S)) \) for all \( t \in (0, T) \).
The limiting gain and portfolio value of the approximating sequence, if exist, are denoted by \( G_n(t, S) = \lim_{n \to \infty} G(t, S) \) and \( V_n(t, S) = \lim_{n \to \infty} V(t, S) \). Note that condition 1. can be equivalently reformulated in terms of \( G \) or \( V \) and, in case it holds, equation (3.5) is still satisfied by the limiting quantities. Assuming 1., Condition 2. is equivalent to the equation
\[
V(t, S) - V(t-, S) = \phi(t, S)(S(t) - S(t-)) \quad \forall t \in (0, T],
\]
while condition 3. equates to the right-continuity of \( V(\cdot, S) \). In this setting, the objects of main interest can be expressed in terms of properly defined ‘one-sided’ integrals, namely
\[
\psi(t, S) = V_0(S(0)) - \phi(0+, S)S(0) - \int_0^t S(u)d\phi(u+, S) + S(t)(\phi(t+, S) - \phi(t, S)),
\]
where the right integral of \( S \) with respect to \((\phi(\cdot, S), \Pi)\) is defined as
\[
\int_0^t S(u)d\phi(u+, S) := \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{j=1}^m S(\tau^n_j \wedge t) \left( \phi((t^n_j \wedge t) +, S) - \phi((t^n_{j-1} \wedge t) +, S) \right),
\]
and \( G(t, S) = \int_0^t \phi(u+, S)dS(u) \), where the left integral of \( \phi(\cdot, S) \) with respect to \((S, \Pi)\) is defined as
\[
\int_0^t \phi(u+, S)dS(u) := \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{j=1}^m \phi(\tau^n_{j-1} +, S) \left( S(t^n_j \wedge t) - S(t^n_{j-1} \wedge t) \right).
\]
The existence and finiteness of either integral is equivalent to condition 1., hence equation (3.5) turns into the following integration-by-parts formula:
\[
\int_0^t \phi(u+, S)dS(u) = \phi(t+, S)S(t) - \phi(0+, S)S(0) - \int_0^t S(u)d\phi(u+, S).
\]
It is important to note that the one-sided integrals can exist even if the correspondent Riemann-Stieltjes integrals do not, in which case the right-integral may differ in value from the left-integral with respect to the same functions. When the Riemann-Stieltjes integrals exist, they necessarily coincide respectively with (3.8) and (3.9). Moreover, these latter are associated to a specific
3.1. Pathwise integration and model-free arbitrage

sequence of partitions \( \Pi \) along which convergence for \( S \) holds true. Once established the set-up, Bick and Willinger provide a few examples showing how to compute the portfolio value in different situations where convergence holds for \( S \) in a certain sub-class of \( D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+) \), along an arbitrary sequence of partitions.

Finally, they use the pathwise calculus introduced in \( [46] \) to compute the portfolio value of general trading strategies depending only on time and on the current observed price in a smooth way.

Their two main claims, slightly reformulated, are the following.

**Proposition 3.1** (Proposition 2 in \( [11] \)). Let \( f : [0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \) be such that \( f \in C^2([0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+) \cap C(\{T\} \times \mathbb{R}_+) \) and \( \Pi \) be a given sequence of partitions whose mesh tends to 0. If the price path \( S \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+) \) has finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) and if \( f, \partial_x f, \partial_t f, \partial_{xx} f, \partial_{tt} f \) have finite left limits in \( T \), then the trading strategy \((0, \phi, \Pi)\), where \( \phi(t, S) = f_x(t-, S(t-)) \), converges for \( S \) and its portfolio value at any time \( t \in [0, T] \) is given by

\[
(-) \int_0^t \phi(u+, S)dS(u) = f(t, S(t)) - f(0, S(0)) - \int_0^t \partial_t f(u, S(u))du \quad (3.10)
\]

\[
- \frac{1}{2} \int_{[0,t]} \partial_{xx} f(u-, S(u-))d[S](u) \\
- \sum_{u \leq t} \left[ f(u, S(u)) - f(u-, S(u-)) \\
- \partial_x f(u-, S(u-))\Delta S(u) - \frac{1}{2} \partial_{xx} f(u-, S(u-))\Delta S^2(u) \right].
\]

This statement is a straightforward application of the Föllmer’s equation \( (1.9) \) by the choice \( x(t) = (t, S(t)) \), which makes the definition of the Föllmer’s integral \( (1.8) \) equivalent to the sum of a Riemann integral and a left-integral, i.e.

\[
\int_0^t \nabla f(x(u-)) \cdot dx(u) = \int_0^t \partial_t f(u, S(u))du + (-) \int_0^t \partial_x f(u, S(u))dS(u).
\]

Moreover, the convergence is ensured by remarking that the pathwise formula \( (3.10) \) implies that the portfolio value \( V(t, S) = (-) \int_0^t \phi(u+, S)dS(u) \) is
a càdlàg function and has jumps

\[ \Delta V(t) = \partial_x f(t-, S(t-)) \Delta S(t) = \phi(t, S) \Delta S(t) \text{ for all } t \in (0, T], \]

hence conditions 2. and 3. are respectively satisfied.

The second statement is a direct implication of the previous one and provides a non-probabilistic version of the pricing problem for one-dimensional diffusion models.

**Proposition 3.2** (Proposition 3 in [11]). Let \( f : [0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \) be such that \( f \in C^2([0, T) \times \mathbb{R}_+) \cap C(\{T\} \times \mathbb{R}_+) \) and \( f, \partial_x f, \partial_t f, \partial_{tx} f, \partial_{tt} f \) have finite left limits in \( T \), and let \( \Pi \) be a given sequence of partitions whose mesh tends to 0. Assume that \( f \) satisfies the partial differential equation

\[ \partial_t f(t, x) + \frac{1}{2} \beta^2(t, x) \partial_{xx} f(t, x) = 0, \quad t \in [0, T], x \in \mathbb{R}_+, \quad (3.11) \]

where \( \beta : [0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \) is a continuous function. If the price path \( S \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+) \) has finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \) of the form \[ S(t) = \int_0^t \beta^2(u, S(u)) du \text{ for all } t \in [0, T], \]
then the trading strategy \((f(0, S(0)), \phi, \Pi)\), where \( \phi(t, S) = \partial_x f(t-, S(t-)) \), converges for \( S \) and its portfolio value at time \( t \in [0, T] \) is \( f(t, S(t)) \).

Following Bick and Willinger’s approach, all that has to be specified is the set of all possible scenarios and the trading instructions for each possible scenario. The investor’s probabilistic beliefs can then be considered as a way to express the set of all possible scenarios together with their odds, however there may be no need to consider them. Indeed, by taking any financial market model in which the price process satisfies almost surely the assumptions of either above proposition, the portfolio value of the correspondent trading strategy, computed pathwise, will provide almost surely the model-based value of such portfolio. In this way, on one hand the negligible set outside of which the pathwise results do not hold depends on the specific sequence of time partitions, but on the other hand we get a path-by-path interpretation of the hedging issue, which was missing in the stochastic approach.
Karandikar’s pathwise construction of stochastic integrals

In 1994, Karandikar [62] proposed another pathwise approach to stochastic integration for continuous time stochastic processes. She proved a pathwise integration formula, first for Brownian integrals, then for the general case of semimartingales and a large class of integrands. It is fixed a complete probability space \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})\), equipped with a filtration \((\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \geq 0}\) satisfying the usual conditions.

**Proposition 3.3** (Pathwise Brownian integral, [62]). Let \(W\) be a \((\mathcal{F}_t)\)-Brownian motion and \(Z\) be a càdlàg \((\mathcal{F}_t)\)-adapted process. For all \(n \geq 1\), let \(\{\tau^n_i\}_{i \geq 0}\) be the random time partition defined by

\[
\tau^n_0 := 0, \quad \tau^n_{i+1} := \inf\{t \geq \tau^n_i : |Z(t) - Z(\tau^n_i)| \geq 2^{-n}\}, \quad i \geq 0,
\]

and \((Y^n(t))_{t \geq 0}\) be a stochastic process defined by, for all \(t \in [0, \infty)\),

\[
Y^n(t) := \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} Z(\tau^n_i \wedge t) (W(\tau^n_{i+1} \wedge t) - W(\tau^n_i \wedge t)).
\]

Then, for all \(T \in [0, \infty)\), almost surely, \(\sup_{t \in [0, T]} \left| Y^n(t) - \int_0^t ZdW \right| \rightarrow 0\) as \(n \rightarrow \infty\).

The proof hinges on the Doob’s inequality for \(p = 2\), which says that a càdlàg martingale \(M\) such that, for all \(t \in [0, T]\), \(\mathbb{E}[|M(t)|^2] < \infty\), satisfies

\[
\left\| \sup_{t \in [0, T]} |M(t)| \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{P})} \leq 4 \|M(T)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{P})}.
\]

Indeed, by taking \(M(t) = \int_0^t (Z^n - Z)dW\), where \(Z^n := \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} Z(\tau^n_{i-1}) \mathbb{1}_{[\tau^n_{i-1}, \tau^n_i)}\), the Doob’s inequality holds and gives

\[
\mathbb{E} \left[ \sup_{t \in [0, T]} \left| Y^n(t) - \int_0^t ZdW \right|^2 \right] \leq 4T 2^{-2n},
\]

by the definitions of \(\{\tau^n_i\}\) and \(Y^n\).

Finally, by denoting \(U_n := \sup_{t \in [0, T]} \left| Y^n(t) - \int_0^t ZdW \right|\), the Hölder’s inequality
implies that
\[ \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_{n \geq 1} U_n \right] \leq 2\sqrt{T} \sum_{n \geq 1} 2^{-n} < \infty, \]
hence, almost surely, \( \sum_{n \geq 1} U_n < \infty \), whence the claim.

The generalization to semimartingale integrators is the following.

**Proposition 3.4** (Pathwise stochastic integral, [62]). Let \( X \) be a semimartingale and \( Z \) be a càdlàg \((F_t)\)-adapted process. For all \( n \geq 1 \), let \( \{\tau^n_i\}_{i \geq 0} \) be the time partition defined as in the previous theorem and \( Y^n \) be the process defined by, for all \( t \in [0, \infty) \),
\[ Y^n(t) := Z(0)X(0) + \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} Z(\tau^n_{i-1} \wedge t)(X(\tau^n_i \wedge t) - X(\tau^n_{i-1} \wedge t)). \]

Then, for all \( T \in [0, \infty) \), almost surely,
\[ \sup_{t \in [0, T]} \left| Y^n(t) - \int_0^t Z(u-)dX(u) \right| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0. \]

The proof is carried out analogously to the Brownian case, using some basic properties of semimartingales and predictable processes. Precisely, \( X \) can be decomposed as \( X = M + A \), where \( M \) is a locally square-integrable martingale and \( A \) has finite variation on bounded intervals, and let \( \{\sigma_k\}_{k > 0} \) be a sequence of stopping times increasing to \( \infty \) such that \( C_k = \mathbb{E}[\langle M \rangle(\sigma_k)] < \infty \). By rewriting \( Y^n(t) = \int_0^t Z^n dX \), where
\[ Z^n := Z(0)1_0 + \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} Z(\tau^n_i)1_{(\tau^n_i, \tau^n_{i+1})}, \]
the Doob’s inequality gives
\[ \mathbb{E} \left[ \sup_{t \in [0, \sigma_k]} \left| \int_0^t (Z^n(u) - Z(u-))dM(u) \right|^2 \right] \leq 4C_k 2^{-2n}, \]
by the definitions of \( \{\tau^n_i\} \). Then, proceeding as before and using \( \sigma_k \nearrow \infty \), for all \( T \in [0, \infty) \), almost surely
\[ \sup_{t \in [0, T]} \left| \int_0^t (Z^n(u) - Z(u-))dM(u) \right| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0. \]
As regards the Stieltjes integrals with respect to $A$, the uniform convergence of $Z^n$ to the left-continuous version of $Z$ implies directly that, almost surely,

$$\sup_{t \in [0,T]} \left| \int_0^t (Z^n(u) - Z(u-))dA(u) \right| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0.$$ 

The main tool in Karandikar’s pathwise characterization of stochastic integrals is the martingale Doob’s inequality. A recent work by Acciaio et al. [1] establishes a deterministic version of the Doob’s martingale inequality, which provides an alternative proof of the latter, both in discrete and continuous time. Using the trajectorial counterparts, they also improve the classical Doob’s estimates for non-negative càdlàg submartingales by using the initial value of the process, obtaining sharp inequalities.

These continuous-time inequalities are proven by means of ad hoc constructed pathwise integrals. First, let us recall the following notion of pathwise integral (see [78, Chapter 2.5]):

**Definition 3.2.** Given two càdlàg functions $f, g : [0, T] \to [0, \infty)$, the Left Cauchy-Stieltjes integral of $g$ with respect to $f$ is defined as the limit, denoted $(LCS)\int_0^T gdf$, of the directed function $(SLC(f; \cdot), \mathcal{F})$, where the Left Cauchy sum is defined by

$$SLC(g, f; \kappa) := \sum_{t_i \in \kappa} g(t_i)(f(t_{i+1}) - f(t_i)), \quad \kappa \in \mathcal{P}[0, T]. \quad (3.12)$$

Acciaio et al. [1] are interested in the particular case where the integrand is of the form $g = h(\bar{f})$ and $h : [0, \infty) \to [0, \infty)$ is a continuous monotone function. In this case, the limit of the sums in (3.12) in the sense of refinements of partitions exists if and only if its predictable version $(LCS)\int_0^T g(t-)df(t) := \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t^n_i \in \pi^n} g(t^n_i -)(f(t^n_{i+1}) - f(t^n_i))$ exists for every dense sequence of partitions $(\pi^n)_{n \geq 0}$, in which case the two limits coincide. By monotonicity of $g$ and rearranging the finite sums, it follows that $\int_0^T g(t)df(t)$ is well defined if and only if $\int_0^T f(t)dg(t)$ is; if so, they lead to
the following integration-by-parts formula:

\[
(LCS) \int_0^T g(t) df(t) = g(T)f(T) - g(0)f(0) - (LCS) \int_0^T f(t) dg(t)
- \sum_{0 \leq t \leq T} \Delta g(t) \Delta f(t). \tag{3.13}
\]

By the assumptions on \( h \), the two integrals exist and the equation (3.13) holds. Moreover, given a martingale \( S \) on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \geq 0}, \mathbb{P})\) and taking \( f \) to be the path of \( S \), the Left Cauchy-Stieltjes integral coincides almost surely with the Itô integral, i.e.

\[
(h(\bar{S}) \cdot S)(T, \omega) = (LCS) \int_0^T h(\bar{S}(\cdot, \omega)) dS(t, \omega), \text{ for } \mathbb{P}\text{-almost all } \omega \in \Omega.
\]

Indeed, Karandikar [62] showed the almost sure uniform convergence of the sums in (3.12) to the Itô integral along a specific sequence of random partitions; therefore, by the existence of the pathwise integral and uniqueness of the limit, the two coincide.

The trajectorial Doob inequality obtained in continuous time and using the pathwise integral defined above is the following.

**Proposition 3.5.** Let \( f : [0, T] \to [0, \infty) \) be a càdlàg function, \( 1 < p < \infty \) and \( h(x) := -\frac{p^2}{p-1} x^{p-1} \), then

\[
\bar{f}^p(T) \leq (LCS) \int_0^T h(\bar{f}(t)) df(t) - \frac{p}{p-1} f(0)^p + \left( \frac{p}{p-1} \right)^p f(T)^p.
\]

**Pathwise integration under a family of measures**

In 2012, motivated by problems involving stochastic integrals under families of measures, Nutz [80] proposed a different pathwise “construction” of the Itô integral of an arbitrary predictable process under a general set of probability measures \( \mathcal{P} \) which is not dominated by a finite measure and under which the integrator process is a semimartingale. However, his result concerns only existence and does not provide a constructive procedure to compute such integral.
Let us briefly recall his technique. It is fixed a measurable space \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\) endowed with a right-continuous filtration \(\mathbb{F}^* = (\mathcal{F}_t^*)_{t \in [0,1]}\) which is \(\mathcal{P}\)-universally augmented. \(X\) denotes a càdlàg \((\mathbb{F}^*, \mathbb{P})\)-semimartingale for all \(\mathbb{P} \in \mathcal{P}\) and \(H\) is an \(\mathbb{F}^*\)-predictable process. The approach is to average \(H\) in time in order to obtain approximating processes of finite variation which allow to define (pathwise) a sequence of Lebesgue-Stieltjes integrals converging in medial limit to the Itô integrals. To this aim, a domination assumption is needed, but it is imposed at the level of characteristics, thus preserving the non-dominated nature of \(\mathcal{P}\) encountered in all applications. So, it is assumed that there exists a predictable càdlàg increasing process \(A\) such that

\[
B^\mathbb{P} + \langle X^c \rangle^\mathbb{P} + (x^2 \wedge 1) \ast \nu^\mathbb{P} \ll A \quad \text{\(\mathbb{P}\)-a.s.}, \text{ for all } \mathbb{P} \in \mathcal{P},
\]

where \((B^\mathbb{P}, \langle X^c \rangle^\mathbb{P}, \nu^\mathbb{P})\) is the canonical triplet (i.e. the triplet associated with the truncation function \(h(x) = x \mathbb{1}_{\{x<1\}}\)) of predictable characteristics of \(X\).

The main result is the following.

**Theorem 3.3.** Under the assumption above, there exists an \(\mathbb{F}^*\)-adapted càdlàg process \(\left(\int_0^t H \, dX\right)_{t \in [0,1]}\) such that \(\int_0^t H \, dX = (H \bullet X)^\mathbb{P}\) \(\mathbb{P}\)-almost surely, for all \(\mathbb{P} \in \mathcal{P}\), where the construction of \((\int H \, dX)(\omega)\) involves only \(H(\omega)\) and \(X(\omega)\).

The proof stands on two lemmas. Without loss of generality and to simplify notation, it is set \(X(0) = 0\) and defined \(H(t) = A(t) = 0\) for all \(t < 0\); it is also assumed that \(X\) has bounded jumps, \(|\Delta X| \leq 1\), \(H\) is uniformly bounded, \(|H| \leq c\), and \(A(t) - A(s) \geq t - s\) for all \(0 \leq s \leq t \leq 1\).

**Lemma 3.4.** For all \(n \geq 1\), the processes \(H^n, Y^n\), defined by

\[
H^n(0) := 0, \quad H^n(t) := \frac{1}{A_t - A_{t - \frac{1}{n}}} \int_{t - \frac{1}{n}}^{t} H(s) \, dA(s), \quad 0 < t \leq 1,
\]

\[
Y^n := H^n X - \int_0^t X(s-) \, dH^n(s),
\]

are well defined (pathwise) in the Lebesgue-Stieltjes sense and

\[
Y^n = (H^n \bullet X)^\mathbb{P} \quad \text{\(\mathbb{P}\)-a.s.}, \quad Y^n \overset{\text{ucP(\mathbb{P})}}{\longrightarrow} (H \bullet X)^\mathbb{P} \quad \text{for all } \mathbb{P} \in \mathcal{P}.
\]
Lemma 3.5. Let \((Y^n)_{n \geq 1}\) be a sequence of \(\mathbb{F}^*\)-adapted càdlàg processes and assume that for each \(\mathbb{P} \in \mathcal{P}\) there exists a càdlàg process \(Y^\mathbb{P}\) such that \(Y^n(t) \overset{\mathbb{P}}{\rightarrow} Y^\mathbb{P}(t)\) for all \(t \in [0, 1]\). Then, there exists an \(\mathbb{F}^*\)-adapted càdlàg process \(Y\) such that \(Y = Y^\mathbb{P}\) \(\mathbb{P}\)-almost surely for all \(\mathbb{P} \in \mathcal{P}\).

The first claim in Lemma 3.4 is a consequence of the assumptions on \(H,A\), while the convergence in \(ucp(\mathbb{P})\) is implied by the \(L^2(\mathbb{P})\) convergence

\[
\mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P} \left[ \sup_{t \in [0,1]} \left| \int_0^t H^n(s) dX(s) - \int_0^t H(s) dX(s) \right|^2 \right] \overset{n \rightarrow \infty}{\longrightarrow} 0,
\]

which in turn is proven thanks to the convergence of \(H^n(\omega)\) to \(H(\omega)\) in \(L^1([0,1], dA(\omega))\) for all \(\omega \in \Omega\).

Instead, Lemma 3.5 relies on the notion of Mokobodzki’s medial limit, a kind of ‘projective limit’ of convergence in measure. More precisely, the medial limit \(\lim \text{med}_n\) is a map on the set of real sequences, such that, if \((Z_n)_{n \geq 1}\) is a sequence of random variables on a measurable space, the medial limit defines a universally measurable random variable \(Z\), \(Z(\omega) : = \lim \text{med}_n Z_n(\omega)\), such that, if for some probability measure \(\mathbb{P}\), \(Z_n \overset{\mathbb{P}}{\rightarrow} Z^\mathbb{P}\), then \(Z^\mathbb{P} = Z\) \(\mathbb{P}\)-almost surely.

However, as anticipated above, Nutz’s method does not give a pathwise computation of stochastic integrals, though it supplies us with a process which coincides \(\mathbb{P}\)-almost surely with the \(\mathbb{P}\)-stochastic integral for each \(\mathbb{P}\) in the set of measures \(\mathcal{P}\) and is a limit in \(ucp(\mathbb{P})\) of approximating Stieltjes integrals.

### 3.1.2 Model-free arbitrage strategies

Once we have at our disposal a pathwise notion of gain process, a natural next step is to examine the corresponding notion of arbitrage strategy.

The literature investigating arbitrage notions in financial markets admitting uncertainty is recent and there are different approaches to the subject. The mainstream approach is that of model-uncertainty, where arbitrage notions are reformulated for families of probability measures in a way analogous
to the classical case of a stochastic model. However, most of the contributions in this direction deal with discrete-time frameworks. In continuous time, recent results are found in \[9\].

An important series of papers exploring arbitrage-like notions by a model-free approach is due to Vladimir Vovk (see e.g. Vovk \[103, 106, 105, 104\]). He introduced an outer measure (see \[101, Definition 1.7.1\] for the definition of outer measure) on the space of possible price paths, called upper price (Definition 3.6), as the minimum super-replication price of a very special class of European contingent claims. The important intuition behind this notion of upper price is that the sets of price paths with zero upper price, called null sets, allow for the infinite gain of a positive portfolio capital with unitary initial endowment. The need to guarantee this type of market efficiency in a financial market leads to discard the null sets. Vovk says that a property holds for typical paths if the set of paths where it does not hold is null, i.e. has zero upper price. Let us give some details.

**Definition 3.6 (Vovk’s upper price).** The upper price of a set \(E \subset \Omega\) is defined as

\[
\bar{P}(E) := \inf_{S \in \mathcal{S}} \{S(0) | \forall \omega \in \Omega, S(T, \omega) \geq 1_E(\omega)\},
\]

(3.14)

where \(\mathcal{S}\) is the set of all positive capital processes \(S\), that is: \(S = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \nu^{c_n,G_n}\), where \(\nu^{c_n,G_n}\) are the portfolio values of bounded simple predictable strategies trading at a non-decreasing infinite sequence of stopping times \(\{\tau^n_i\}_{i \geq 1}\), such that for all \(\omega \in \Omega\) \(\tau^n_i(\omega) = \infty\) for all but finitely many \(i \in \mathbb{N}\), with initial capitals \(c_n\) and with the constraints \(\nu^{c_n,G_n} \geq 0\) on \([0, T] \times \Omega\) for all \(n \in \mathbb{N}\) and \(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n < \infty\).

It is immediate to see that \(\bar{P}(E) = 0\) if and only if there exists a positive capital process \(S\) with initial capital \(S(0) = 1\) and infinite capital at time \(T\) on all paths in \(E\), i.e. \(S(T, \omega) = \infty\) for all \(\omega \in E\).

Depending on what space \(\Omega\) is considered, Vovk obtained specific results. In particular, he investigated properties of typical paths that concern their measure of variability. The most general framework considered
Chapter 3. PATHWISE CONTINUOUS-TIME TRADING

is $\Omega = D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+)$. He proved in [105] that typical paths $\omega$ have a $p$-variation index less or equal to 2, which means that the $p$-variation is finite for all $p > 2$, but we have no information for $p = 2$ (a stronger result is stated in [105, Proposition 1]). If we relax the positivity and we restrict to càdlàg path with all components having ‘moderate jumps’ in the sense of (3.15), then Vovk [104] obtained appealing results regarding the quadratic variation of typical paths along special sequences of random partitions. Indeed, by adding a control on the size of the jumps, in the sense of considering the sample space $\Omega = \Omega_\psi$, defined as

$$\Omega_\psi := \left\{ \omega \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}) \mid \forall t \in (0, T], |\Delta \omega(t)| \leq \psi \left( \sup_{s \in (0, t]} |\omega(s)| \right) \right\} \quad (3.15)$$

for a given non-decreasing function $\psi : [0, \infty)$, Vovk [104] obtained finer results. In particular, he proved the existence for typical paths of the quadratic variation in Definition [105] along a special sequence of nested vertical partitions. It is however important to remark ([104, Proposition 1]) that the same result applies to all sequences of nested partitions of dyadic type, and that any two sequences of dyadic type give the same value of quadratic variation for typical paths. A sequence of nested partitions is called of dyadic type if it is composed of stopping times such that there exist a polynomial $p$ and a constant $C$ and

1. for all $\omega \in \Omega_\psi$, $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$, $0 \leq s < t \leq T$, if $|\omega(t) - \omega(s)| > C2^{-n}$, then there is an element of the $n^{th}$ partition which belongs to $(s, t]$,

2. for typical $\omega$, from some $n$ on, the number of finite elements of the $n^{th}$ partition is at most $p(n)2^{2n}$.

The sharper results are obtained when the sample space is $\Omega = C([0, T], \mathbb{R})$ (or equivalently $\Omega = C([0, T], [0, \infty))$). In this case, in [106] it is proved that typical paths are constant or have a $p$-variation which is finite for all $p > 2$ and infinite for $p \leq 2$ (stronger results are stated in [106, Corollaries 4.6,4.7]. Note that the situation changes remarkably from the space of càdlàg paths.
to the space of continuous paths. Indeed, no (positive) càdlàg path which is bounded away from zero and has finite total variation can belong to a null set in $D([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d_+)$, while all continuous paths with finite total variation belong to a null set in $C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d_+)$.

A similar notion of outer measure is introduced by Perkowski and Prömel [89], which is more intuitive in terms of hedging strategies. He considers portfolio values that are limits of simple predictable portfolios with the same positive initial capital and whose correspondent simple trading strategies never risk more than the initial capital.

**Definition 3.7** (Definition 3.2.1 in [88]). The outer content of a set $E \subset \Omega := C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$ is defined as

$$\tilde{\mathbb{P}}(E) := \inf_{(H^n)_{n \geq 1} \in \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{\lambda, s}} \{\lambda | \forall \omega \in \Omega, \liminf_{n \to \infty} (\lambda + (H^n \bullet \omega)(T)) \geq 1_E(\omega)\}, \quad (3.16)$$

where $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_{\lambda, s}$ is the set of all $\lambda$-admissible simple strategies, that is of bounded simple predictable strategies $H^n$ trading at a non-decreasing infinite sequence of stopping times $\{\tau^n_i\}_{i \geq 1}, \tau^n_i(\omega) = \infty$ for all but finitely many $i \in \mathbb{N}$ for all $\omega \in \Omega$, such that $(H^n \bullet \omega)(t) \geq -\lambda$ for all $(t, \omega) \in [0, T] \times \Omega$.

Analogously to Vovk’s upper price, the $\tilde{\mathbb{P}}$-null sets are identified with the sets where the inferior limit of some sequence of 1-admissible simple strategies brings infinite capital at time $T$. This characterization is shown to be a model-free interpretation of the condition of no arbitrage of the first kind (NA1) from mathematical finance, also referred to as no unbounded profit with bounded risk (see e.g. [63, 64]). Indeed, in a financial model where the price process is a semimartingale on some probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$, the (NA1) property holds if the set $\{1 + (H \bullet S)(T), H \in \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_1\}$ is bounded in $\mathbb{P}$-probability, i.e. if

$$\lim_{c \to \infty} \sup_{H \in \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_1,s} \mathbb{P}(1 + (H \bullet S)(T) \geq c) = 0.$$ 

On the other hand, [88, Proposition 3.28] proved that an event $A \in \mathcal{F}$ which is $\tilde{\mathbb{P}}$-null has zero probability for any probability measure on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ such that the coordinate process satisfies (NA1).
However, the characterization of null sets in [89, 88] is possibly weaker than Vovk’s one. In fact, the outer measure \( \tilde{\mathbb{P}} \) is dominated by the outer measure \( \mathbb{P} \).

A distinct approach to a model-free characterization of arbitrage is proposed by Riedel [91], although he only allows for static hedging. He considers a Polish space \((\Omega, d)\) with the Borel sigma-field and he assumes that there are \(D\) uncertain assets in the market with known non-negative prices \(f_d \geq 0\) at time 0 and uncertain values \(S_d\) at time \(T\), which are continuous on \((\Omega, d)\), \(d = 1, \ldots, D\). A portfolio is a vector \(\pi\) in \(\mathbb{R}^{D+1}\) and it is called an arbitrage if \(\pi \cdot f \leq 0, \pi \cdot S \geq 0\) and \(\pi \cdot S(\omega) > 0\) for some \(\omega \in \Omega\), where \(f_0 = S_0 = 1\). Thus the classical “almost surely” is replaced by “for all scenarios” and “with positive probability” is replaced by “for some scenarios”. The main theorem in [91] is a model-free version of the FTAP and states that the market is arbitrage-free if and only if there exists a full support martingale measure, that is a probability measure whose topological support in the polish space of reference is the full space and under which the expectation of the final prices \(S\) is equal to the initial prices \(f\). This is proven thanks to the continuity assumption of \(S(\omega)\) in \(\omega\) on one side and a separation argument on the other side. Even without a prior probability assumption, it shows that, if there are no (static) arbitrages in the market, it is possible to introduce a pricing probability measure, which assigns positive probability to all open sets.

3.2 The setting

We consider a continuous-time frictionless market open for trade during the time interval \([0, T]\), where \(d\) risky (non-dividend-paying) assets are traded besides a riskless security, named ‘bond’. The latter is assumed to be the numeraire security and we refer directly to the forward asset prices and portfolio values, which makes this framework of simplified notation without loss of generality. Our setting does not make use of any (subjective) probabilistic assumption on the market dynamics and we construct trading strategies
3.2. The setting

Based on the realized paths of the asset prices.

Precisely, we consider the metric space \((\Omega, ||\cdot||_{\infty})\), \(\Omega := D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_d^+)\), provided with the Borel sigma-field \(\mathcal{F}\) and the canonical filtration \(\mathbb{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0, T]}\), that is the natural filtration generated by the coordinate process \(S, S(t, \omega) := \omega(t)\) for all \(\omega \in \Omega, t \in [0, T]\). Thinking of our financial market, \(\Omega\) represents the space of all possible trajectories of the asset prices up to time \(T\). When considering only continuous price trajectories, we will restrict to the subspace \(\Omega^0 := C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_d^+)\).

In such analytical framework, we think of a continuous-time path-dependent trading strategy as determined by the value of the initial investment and the quantities of asset and bond holdings, given by functions of time and of the price trajectory.

**Definition 3.8.** A trading strategy in \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\) is any triple \((V_0, \phi, \psi)\), where \(V_0 : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}\) is \(\mathcal{F}_0\)-measurable and \(\phi = (\phi(t, \cdot))_{t \in [0, T]}, \psi = (\psi(t, \cdot))_{t \in [0, T]}\) are \(\mathbb{F}\)-adapted càglàd processes on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\), respectively with values in \(\mathbb{R}_d\) and in \(\mathbb{R}\). The portfolio value \(V\) of such trading strategy at any time \(t \in [0, T]\) and for any price path \(\omega \in \Omega\) is given by

\[
V(t, \omega; \phi, \psi) = \phi(t, \omega) \cdot \omega(t) + \psi(t, \omega).
\]

Economically speaking, \(\phi(t, \omega), \psi(t, \omega)\) represent the vectors of the number of assets and bonds, respectively, held in the trading portfolio at time \(t\) in the scenario \(w \in \Omega\). The left-continuity of the trading processes comes from the fact that any revision to the portfolio will be executed the instant just after the time the decision is made. On the other hand, their right-continuous modifications \(\phi(t+, \omega), \psi(t+, \omega)\), defined by

\[
\phi(t+, \omega) := \lim_{s \searrow t} \phi(s, \omega), \quad \psi(t+, \omega) := \lim_{s \searrow t} \psi(s, \omega), \quad \forall \omega \in \Omega, t \in [0, T)
\]

represent respectively the number of assets and bonds in the portfolio just after any revision of the trading portfolio decided at time \(t\). The choice of strategies adapted to the canonical filtration conveys the realistic assumption
that any trading decision makes use only of the price information available at the time it takes place.

We aim to identify self-financing trading strategies in this pathwise framework, that is portfolios where changes in the asset position are necessarily financed by buying or selling bonds without adding or withdrawing any cash. In particular, we look for those of them which trade continuously in time but still allow for an explicit computation of the gain from trading. In the classical literature about continuous-time financial market models, unlike for discrete-time models, we don’t have a general pathwise characterization of self-financing dynamic trading strategies, mainly because of the probabilistic characterization of the gain in terms of a stochastic integral with respect to the asset price process. In the same way, the number of bonds which continuously rebalances the portfolio has no pathwise representation.

Here, we start from considering strategies where the portfolio is rebalanced only a finite number of times, for which the self-financing condition is well established and whose gain is given by a pathwise integral, equal to a Riemann sum.

Henceforth, we will take as given a dense nested sequence of time partitions, \( \Pi = (\pi^n)_{n \geq 1} \), i.e. \( \pi^n = \{0 = t^n_0 < t^n_1 < \ldots, t^n_{m(n)} = T\} \), \( \pi^n \subset \pi^{n+1} \), \( |\pi^n| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} \infty \).

We denote by \( \Sigma(\Pi) \) the set of simple predictable processes whose jump times are covered by one of the partitions in \( \Pi \):

\[
\Sigma(\pi^n) := \left\{ \phi : \forall i = 0, \ldots, m(n) - 1, \exists \lambda_i, {\mathcal{F}}_{t^n_i}-\text{measurable } \mathbb{R}^d-\text{valued random variable on } (\Omega, {\mathcal{F}}), \phi(t, \omega) = \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \lambda_i(\omega) \mathbb{1}_{(t^n_i, t^n_{i+1}]} \right\},
\]

\[
\Sigma(\Pi) := \bigcup_{n \geq 1} \Sigma(\pi^n).
\]

\(^1\)We could assume in more generality that the jump times are only covered by \( \cup_{n \geq 1} \pi^n \), but at the expense of more complicated formulas.
3.2. The setting

3.2.1 A plausibility requirement

The results reviewed in Subsection 3.1.2 cannot directly be applied to our framework, because the partitions considered there consist of stopping times, i.e. depend on the path, while we are given a fixed sequence of partitions Π. Nonetheless, we can deduce that if we consider a singleton \(\{\omega\}\), where \(\omega \in \Omega_\psi\) with \(\Omega_\psi\) defined in (3.15), and our sequence of partition is of dyadic type for \(\omega\), then the property of finite quadratic variation for \(\omega\) is necessary to prevent the existence of a positive capital process, according to Definition 3.6, trading at times in Π, that starts from a finite initial capital but ends up with infinite capital at time \(T\). However, the conditions imposed on the sequence of partitions are difficult to check.

Instead, we turn around the point of view: we want to keep our sequence of partitions Π fixed and to identify the right subset of paths in Ω that is plausible working with. To do so, we propose the following notion of plausibility that, together with a technical condition on the paths, suggests that it is indeed a good choice to work on set of price paths with finite quadratic variation along Π, as we do in all the following sections.

**Definition 3.9.** A set of paths \(U \subset \Omega\) is called plausible if there does not exist a sequence \((V^n_0, \phi^n)\) of simple self-financing strategies such that:

(i) the correspondent sequence of portfolio values, \(\{V(t, \omega; \phi^n)\}_{n \geq 1}\), is non-decreasing for all paths \(\omega \in U\) at any time \(t \in [0,T]\),

(ii) the correspondent sequence of initial investments \(\{V^n_0(\omega_0)\}_{n \geq 1}\) converges for all paths \(\omega \in U\),

(iii) the correspondent sequence of gains along some path \(\omega \in U\) at the final time \(T\) grows to infinity with \(n\), i.e. \(G(T, \omega; \phi^n) \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} \infty\).

**Proposition 3.6.** Let \(U \subset \Omega\) be a set of price paths satisfying, for all \((t, \omega) \in\)
Then:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} \sum_{j,k \neq k, t_i - 1 < t_j, t_k < t_{i+1}} (\omega(t_{i+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_i^n \land t))(\omega(t_{i+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_i^n \land t)) \right) < \infty.$$ (3.17)

Then, if $U$ is plausible, all paths $\omega \in U$ have finite quadratic variation along $\Pi$.

**Proof.** First, let us write explicitly what the condition (3.17) means in terms of the relation between the $\omega$ and the sequence of nested partitions $\Pi$. Let $d = 1$ for sake of notation. Denote by $A^n$ the $n^{th}$-approximation of the quadratic variation along $\Pi$, i.e.

$$A^n(t, \omega) := \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} (\omega(t_{i+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_i^n \land t))^2 \quad \forall (t, \omega) \in [0, T] \times \Omega.$$ Then:

$$A^n(t, \omega) - A^{n-1}(t, \omega) =$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} (\omega(t_{i+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_i^n \land t))^2 - \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} (\omega(t_{i+1}^{n-1} \land t) - \omega(t_i^{n-1} \land t))^2$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} \left( \sum_{t_i - 1 < t_j < t_{i+1}^{n-1}} (\omega(t_{j+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_j^n \land t))^2 - (\omega(t_{i+1}^{n-1} \land t) - \omega(t_i^{n-1} \land t))^2 \right)$$

$$= -2 \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} \sum_{t_i - 1 < t_j < t_{k+1}^n \land t_k < t_{i+1}^{n-1}} (\omega(t_{j+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_j^n \land t))(\omega(t_{k+1}^n \land t) - \omega(t_k^n \land t)).$$

Thus the series in (3.17) is exactly the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A^n(t, \omega) - A^{n-1}(t, \omega))^-$. Now, for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let us define a simple predictable process $\phi^n \in \Sigma(\pi^n)$ by

$$\phi^n(t, \omega) := -2 \sum_{i=0}^{m(n) - 1} \omega(t_i^n) 1_{t_i^n, t_{i+1}^n}[t].$$ (3.18)
Then, we can rewrite the \(n\)th approximation of the quadratic variation of \(\omega\) at time \(t \in [0, T]\) as

\[
A^n(t, \omega) = \omega(t)^2 - \omega(0)^2 - 2 \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \omega(t^n_i)(\omega(t^n_{i+1} \wedge t) - \omega(t^n_i \wedge t))
\]

\[
= \omega(t)^2 - \omega(0)^2 + G(t, \omega; \phi^n)
\]

\[
= V(t, \omega; \phi^n) - c_n,
\]

(3.19)

where \(c_n = \omega(0)^2 - \omega(t)^2 + V^n_0(\omega_0)\). We want to define the initial capitals \(V^n_0\) in such a way that the sequence of simple self-financing strategies \((V^n_0, \phi^n)\) has non decreasing portfolio values at any time and the sequence of initial capitals converges. By writing

\[
A^n(t, \omega) - A^{n-1}(t, \omega) + k_n = V(t, \omega; \phi^n) - V(t, \omega; \phi^{n-1}),
\]

(3.20)

where \(k_n = c_n - c_{n-1} = V^n_0(\omega_0) - V^{n-1}_0(\omega_0)\), we see that the monotonicity of \(\{V(t, \omega; \phi^n)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\) is obtained by opportune\(ly choosing a finite \(k_n \geq 0\) (i.e. by choosing \(V^n_0\)), which is made possible by the boundedness of \(|A^n(t, \omega) - A^{n-1}(t, \omega)|\), implied by condition (3.17). However, it is not sufficient to have \(k_n < \infty\) for all \(n \in \mathbb{N}\), but we need the convergence of the series \(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} k_n\). This is provided again by condition (3.17), because the minimum value of \(k_n\) satisfying the positivity of (3.20) for all \(t \in [0, T]\) is indeed \(\max_{t \in [0,T]}(A^n(t, \omega) - A^{n-1}(t, \omega))^-\). On the other hand, since both the sequence \(\{V(t, \omega; \phi^n)\}_{n \geq 1}\) for any \(t \in [0, T]\) and the sequence \(\{V^n_0\}_{n \geq 1}\) are regular, i.e. they have limit for \(n\) going to infinity, by (3.19) the sequence \(\{A^n(t, \omega)\}_{n \geq 1}\) is also regular. Finally, since the sequence of initial capitals converges, the equation (3.19) implies that the sequence of approximations of the quadratic variation of \(\omega\) converges if and only if \(\{G(T, \omega; \phi^n)\}_{n \geq 1}\) converges. But \(U\) is a plausible set by assumption, thus convergence must hold.
3.3 Self-financing strategies

Definition 3.10. \((V_0, \phi, \psi)\) is called a simple self-financing trading strategy if it is a trading strategy such that \(\phi \in \Sigma(\pi^n)\) for some \(n \in \mathbb{N}\) and

\[
\psi(t, \omega; \phi) = V_0 - \phi(0+, \omega) \cdot \omega(0) - \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)-1} \omega(t^n_i \wedge t) \cdot (\phi(t^n_{i+1} \wedge t, \omega) - \phi(t^n_i \wedge t, \omega))
\]

\[
= V_0 - \phi(0+, \omega) \cdot \omega(0) - \sum_{i=1}^{k(t,n)} \omega(t^n_i) \cdot (\lambda_i(\omega) - \lambda_{i-1}(\omega)), \tag{3.21}
\]

where \(\phi(t, \omega) = \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \lambda_i(\omega) \mathbf{1}_{(t^n_i, t^n_{i+1})}\) and \(k(t, n) := \max\{i \in \{1, \ldots, m\} : t^n_i < t\}\). The gain of such a strategy is defined at any time \(t \in [0, T]\) by

\[
G(t, \omega; \phi) := \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)} \phi(t^n_i \wedge t, \omega) \cdot (\omega(t^n_i \wedge t) - \omega(t^n_{i-1} \wedge t))
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{k(t,n)} \lambda_{i-1}(\omega) \cdot (\omega(t^n_i) - \omega(t^n_{i-1})) + \lambda_{k(t,n)}(\omega) \cdot (\omega(t) - \omega(t^n_{k(t,n)})).
\]

In the following, when there is no ambiguity, we drop the dependence of \(k\) on \(t, n\) and write \(k \equiv k(t, n)\).

Note that the definition (3.21) is equivalent to requiring that the trading strategy \((V_0, \phi, \psi)\) satisfies

\[
V(t, \omega; \phi, \psi) \equiv V(t, \omega; \phi) = V_0 + G(t, \omega; \phi).
\]

Since a simple self-financing trading strategy is uniquely determined by its initial investment and the asset position at all times, we will drop the dependence on \(\psi\) of the quantities involved. For instance, when we are referring to a simple self-financing strategy \((V_0, \phi)\), we implicitly refer to the triplet \((V_0, \phi, \psi)\) with \(\psi \equiv \psi(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)\) defined in (3.21).

Remark 3.11. The portfolio value \(V(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)\) of a simple self-financing strategy \((V_0, \phi, \psi)\) is a càdlàg \(\mathbb{F}\)-adapted process on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\), satisfying

\[
\Delta V(t, \omega; \phi) = \phi(t, \omega) \cdot \Delta \omega(t), \quad \forall t \in [0, T], \omega \in \Omega.
\]
The right-continuity of $V$ comes from the definition (3.21), which implies, for all $t \in [0, T]$ and $\omega \in \Omega$,

$$\psi(t, \omega) + \phi(t, \omega) \cdot \omega(t) = \psi(t+, \omega) + \phi(t+, \omega) \cdot \omega(t).$$

Below, we are going to establish the self-financing conditions for (non-simple) trading strategies.

**Definition 3.12.** Given an $\mathcal{F}_0$-measurable random variable $V_0 : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$ and an $\mathcal{F}$-adapted $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued càdlàg process $\phi = (\phi(t, \cdot))_{t \in [0, T]}$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$, we say that $(V_0, \phi)$ is a self-financing trading strategy on $U \subset \Omega$ if there exists a sequence of self-financing simple trading strategies $\{(V_0^n, \phi^n, \psi^n), n \in \mathbb{N}\}$, such that

$$\forall \omega \in U, \forall t \in [0, T], \quad \phi^n(t, \omega) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \phi(t, \omega),$$

and any of the following conditions is satisfied:

(i) there exists an $\mathcal{F}$-adapted real-valued càdlàg process $G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ such that, for all $t \in [0, T], \omega \in U$,

$$G(t, \omega; \phi^n) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} G(t, \omega; \phi) \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta G(t, \omega; \phi) = \phi(t, \omega) \cdot \Delta \omega(t);$$

(ii) there exists an $\mathcal{F}$-adapted real-valued càdlàg process $\psi(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ such that, for all $t \in [0, T], \omega \in U$,

$$\psi^n(t, \omega) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} \psi(t, \omega; \phi)$$

and

$$\psi(t+, \omega; \phi) - \psi(t, \omega; \phi) = -\omega(t) \cdot (\phi(t+, \omega) - \phi(t, \omega));$$

(iii) there exists an $\mathcal{F}$-adapted real-valued càdlàg process $V(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ such that, for all $t \in [0, T], \omega \in U$,

$$V(t, \omega; \phi^n) \xrightarrow[n \to \infty]{} V(t, \omega; \phi) \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta V(t, \omega; \phi) = \phi(t, \omega) \cdot \Delta \omega(t).$$
Remark 3.13. It is easy to see that the three conditions (i)-(iii) of Definition 3.12 are equivalent. If any of them is fulfilled, the limiting processes $G, \psi, V$ are respectively the gain, bond holdings and portfolio value of the self-financing strategy $(V_0, \phi)$ on $U$ and they satisfy, for all $t \in [0, T], \omega \in U$,

$$V(t, \omega; \phi) = V_0 + G(t, \omega; \phi)$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.22)

and

$$\psi(t, \omega; \phi) = V_0 - \phi(0+, \omega) - \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)} \omega(t^n_i \wedge t) \cdot (\phi^n(t^n_i \wedge t, \omega) - \phi^n(t^n_i \wedge t, \omega)).$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.23)

Equation (3.22) is the pathwise counterpart of the classical definition of self-financing in probabilistic financial market models. However, in our purely analytical framework, we couldn’t take it directly as the self-financing condition because some prior assumptions are needed to define path-by-path the quantities involved.

### 3.4 Pathwise construction of the gain process

In the following two propositions we show that we can identify a special class of (pathwise) self-financing trading strategies, respectively on the set of continuous price paths with finite quadratic variation along $\Pi$ and on the set of càdlàg price paths with finite quadratic variation along $\Pi$, whose gain is computable path-by-path as a limit of Riemann sums.

**Proposition 3.7** (Continuous price paths). Let $\phi = (\phi(t, \cdot))_{t \in [0, T]}$ be an $F$-adapted $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued càdlàg process on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ such that there exists $F \in C^{1,2}_{loc}(\Lambda_T) \cap C^{0,0}(\mathcal{W}_T)$ satisfying

$$\phi(t, \omega) = \nabla_\omega F(t, \omega_t) \quad \forall \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi), t \in [0, T].$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.24)

Then, there exists a càdlàg process $G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$ such that, for all $\omega \in Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$
3.4. Pathwise construction of the gain process

and \( t \in [0, T] \),

\[
G(t, \omega; \phi) = \int_0^t \phi(u, \omega_u) \cdot d\Pi(\omega)
\]

(3.25)

\[
= \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t_i \leq t} \nabla_\omega F(t_i^n, \omega_{t_i}^n) \cdot (\omega(t_{i+1}^n \wedge T) - \omega(t_i^n \wedge T)),
\]

(3.26)

where \( \omega^n \) is defined as in (1.14). Moreover, \( \phi \) is the asset position of a pathwise self-financing trading strategy on \( Q(\Omega^0, \Pi) \) with gain process \( G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi) \).

**Proof.** First of all, under the assumptions, the change of variable formula for functionals of continuous paths holds ([21, Theorem 3]), which ensures the existence of the limit in (3.26) and provide us with the definition of the Föllmer integral in (3.25). Then, we observe that each \( n^{th} \) sum in the right-hand side of (3.26) is exactly the accumulated gain of a pathwise self-financing strategy which trades only a finite number of times. Precisely, let us define, for all \( \omega \in \Omega \) and all \( t \in [0, T) \),

\[
\phi^n(t, \omega) := \phi(0^+, \omega) 1_{\{0\}}(t) + \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \phi \left( t_i^n, \omega_{t_i}^n \right) 1_{(t_i^n, t_{i+1}^n]}(t),
\]

and

\[
\psi^n(t, \omega) := V_0 - \phi(0^+, \omega) - \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)-1} \omega(t_i^n \wedge t) \cdot (\phi^n(t_{i+1}^n \wedge t, \omega) - \phi^n(t_i^n \wedge t, \omega)),
\]

then \((V_0, \phi^n, \psi^n)\) is a simple self-financing strategy, with cumulative gain

\[
G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi^n)
\]

given by

\[
G(t, \omega; \phi^n) = \sum_{i=1}^k \nabla_\omega F \left( t_i^n, \omega_{t_i}^n \right) \cdot (\omega(t_{i-1}^n) - \omega(t_{i-1}^n)) + \nabla_\omega F \left( t_k^n, \omega_{t_k}^n \right) \cdot (\omega(t) - \omega(t_k^n)).
\]

and portfolio value \( V(\cdot, \cdot; \phi^n) \) given by

\[
V(t, \omega; \phi^n) = \psi^n(t, \omega) + \phi^n(t, \omega) \cdot \omega(t) = V_0 + G(t, \omega; \phi^n).
\]
Then, we have to verify that the simple asset position $\phi^n$ converges pointwise to $\phi$, i.e.

$$
\forall \omega \in \Omega, \forall t \in [0, T], \quad |\phi^n(t, \omega) - \phi(t, \omega)| \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0.
$$

This is true, because by assumption $\nabla_\omega F \in C^0_0(\Lambda_T)$ and this implies that the path $t \mapsto F(t, \omega_t -) = F(t, \omega_t)$ is left-continuous (see Remark 1.8). Indeed, for each $t \in [0, T], \omega \in \Omega$ and $\varepsilon > 0$, there exist $\bar{n} \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\eta > 0$, such that, for all $n \geq \bar{n}$,

$$
d_{\infty}\left((t^n_k, \omega^n_{t^n_k -}), (t, \omega)\right) = \max\left\{||\omega^n_{t^n_k -}, \omega_{t^n_k -}||_{\infty}, \sup_{u \in [t^n_k, t]} |\omega(t^n_k) - \omega(u)|\right\} + |t - t^n_k| < \eta,
$$

where $k \equiv k(t, n) := \max\{i \in \{1, \ldots, m\} : t^n_i < t\}$, and

$$
|\phi^n(t, \omega) - \phi(t, \omega)| = \left|\phi(t^n_k, \omega^n_{t^n_k -}) - \phi(t, \omega)\right|
$$

$$
\leq \varepsilon.
$$

We have thus built a sequence of self-financing simple trading strategies approximating $\phi$ and, if the realized price path $\omega$ is continuous with finite quadratic variation along $\Pi$, then the gain of the simple strategies converges to a real-valued càdlàg function $G(\cdot, \omega; \phi)$. Namely, for all $t \in [0, T]$ and $\omega \in Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$,

$$
G(t, \omega; \phi^n) \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} G(t, \omega; \phi), \quad G(t, \omega; \phi) = \int_0^t \nabla_\omega F(u, \omega) \cdot d\Pi_\omega.
$$

Moreover, by the assumptions on $F$ and by Remark 1.8, the map $t \mapsto F(t, \omega_t)$ is continuous for all $\omega \in C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^d)$. Therefore, by the change of variable formula for functionals of continuous paths, $G(\cdot, \omega; \phi)$ is continuous for all $\omega \in Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$.

Thus, the process $G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$ satisfies the condition (i) in Definition 3.12 and so it is the gain process of the self-financing trading strategy with initial value $V_0$ and asset position $\phi$, on the set of continuous paths with finite quadratic variation along $\Pi$. \qed
3.4. Pathwise construction of the gain process

**Corollary 3.1.** Let $\phi$ be as in Proposition 3.7 then $\psi(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$, defined for all $t \in [0, T]$ and $\omega \in Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$ by

$$
\psi(t, \omega; \phi) = V_0 - \phi(0+, \omega)
- \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=1}^{k(t,n)} \omega(t^n_i) \cdot \left( \nabla_\omega F \left( t^n_i, \omega^n_{i-1} \right) - \nabla_\omega F \left( t^n_{i-1}, \omega^n_{i-1} \right) \right),
$$

is the bond holding process of the self-financing trading strategy $(V_0, \phi)$ on $Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$.

**Proposition 3.8** (Càdlàg price paths). Let $\phi = (\phi(t, \cdot))_{t \in (0, T]}$ be an $\mathbb{F}$-adapted $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued càdlàg process on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ such that there exists $F \in \mathcal{C}_{1,2}^1(\Lambda_T) \cap \mathcal{C}_{0,0}^1(\mathcal{W}_T)$ with $\nabla_\omega F \in \mathcal{C}_{0,0}^1(\Lambda_T)$, satisfying

$$
\phi(t, \omega) = \nabla_\omega F(t, \omega_T) \quad \forall \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi), t \in [0, T].
$$

Then, there exists a càdlàg process $G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$ such that, for all $\omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi)$ and $t \in [0, T]$,

$$
G(t, \omega; \phi) = \int_0^t \phi(u, \omega_u) \cdot d\Pi_\omega
- \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t^n_i \leq t} \nabla_\omega F \left( t^n_i, \omega^n_{i-1} \Delta_\omega(t^n_i) \right) \cdot (\omega(t^n_{i+1} \wedge T) - \omega(t^n_i \wedge T)),
$$

(3.27)

where $\omega^n$ is defined as in (1.14). Moreover, $\phi$ is the asset position of a pathwise self-financing trading strategy on $Q(\Omega, \Pi)$ with gain process $G(\cdot, \cdot; \phi)$.

**Proof.** The proof follows the lines of that of Proposition 3.7, using the change of variable formula for functionals of càdlàg paths instead of continuous paths, which entails the definition of the pathwise integral (3.27). For all $\omega \in \Omega$ and $t \in [0, T]$, we define

$$
\phi^n(t, \omega) := \phi(0, \omega) 1_{[0]}(t) + \sum_{i=0}^{m(n)-1} \phi \left( t^n_i +, \omega^n_{i-1} \Delta_\omega(t^n_i) \right) 1_{(t^n_i, t^n_{i+1}]}(t)
$$
Chapter 3. PATHWISE CONTINUOUS-TIME TRADING

\[ \psi^n(t, \omega) := V_0 - \phi(0^+, \omega) - \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)-1} \omega(t_i^n \wedge t) \cdot (\phi^n(t_{i+1}^n \wedge t, \omega) - \phi^n(t_i^n \wedge t, \omega)). \]

then \((V_0, \phi^n, \psi^n)\) is a simple self-financing strategy, with cumulative gain \(G(\cdot; \cdot; \phi^n)\) given by

\[ G^n(t, \omega) = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \nabla_\omega F \left( t_{i-1}^n, \omega^n_{i-1} \right) \cdot (\omega(t_i^n) - \omega(t_{i-1}^n)) \]

\[ + \nabla_\omega F \left( t_k^n, \omega^n_{t_k^n} \right) \cdot (\omega(t) - \omega(t_k^n)). \]

Finally, we verify that

\[ \forall \omega \in \Omega, \forall t \in [0, T], \quad |\phi^n(t, \omega) - \phi(t, \omega)| \to 0. \]

This is true, by the left-continuity of \(\nabla_\omega F\): for each \(t \in [0, T], \omega \in \Omega\) and \(n \in \mathbb{N}\), we have that \(\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists \eta = \eta(\varepsilon) > 0, \exists \bar{n}(t, \eta) \in \mathbb{N}\) such that,

\[ d_\infty \left( \omega^n_{t_k^n -}, \omega_{t_k^n -} \right) = \max \left\{ ||\omega^n_{t_k^n -}, \omega_{t_k^n -}||_\infty, \sup_{u \in [t_k^n, t]} |\omega(t_k^n) - \omega(u)| \right\} + |t - t_k^n| < \eta, \]

hence

\[ |\phi^n(t, \omega) - \phi(t, \omega)| = \left| \lim_{s \searrow t_k^n} \phi(s, \omega^n_{t_k^n -}) - \phi(t, \omega) \right| \]

\[ = \lim_{s \searrow t_k^n} \left| \nabla_\omega F(s, \omega^n_{t_k^n -}) - \nabla_\omega F(t, \omega_{t_k^n -}) \right| \leq \varepsilon. \]

Therefore:

\[ G(t, \omega; \phi^n) \to G(t, \omega; \phi), \quad G(t, \omega; \phi) = \int_{(0,t]} \nabla_\omega F(u, \omega_{u-}) \cdot d\Pi_\omega, \]

where \(G(t, \omega; \phi)\) is an \(\mathbb{F}\)-adapted real-valued process on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\). Moreover, by the change of variable formula \((1.16)\) and Remark \(1.8\) it is càdlàg with
3.5 Pathwise replication of contingent claims

left-side jumps

\[ \Delta G(t, \omega; \phi) = \lim_{s \searrow t} (G(t, \omega; \phi) - G(s, \omega; \phi)) \]
\[ = F(t, \omega_t) - F(t, \omega_{t-}) - (F(t, \omega_t) - F(t, \omega_{t-}) - \nabla_{\omega} F(t, \omega_{t-}) \cdot \Delta \omega(t)) \]
\[ = \nabla_{\omega} F(t, \omega_{t-}) \cdot \Delta \omega(t). \]

\[ \text{Corollary 3.2. Let } \phi \text{ be as in Proposition } 3.8, \text{ then } \psi(\cdot, \cdot; \phi), \text{ defined for all } t \in [0, T] \text{ and } \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi) \text{ by} \]
\[ \psi(t, \omega; \phi) = V_0 - \phi(0^+, \omega) \]
\[ - \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=1}^{k(t,n)} \omega(t^n_i) \cdot \left( \nabla_{\omega} F^n_{t^n_i} \left( \omega^n_{t_i^n-} \Delta \omega(t^n_i) \right) - \nabla_{\omega} F^n_{t^n_{i-1}} \left( \omega^n_{t^n_{i-1}-} \Delta \omega(t^n_{i-1}) \right) \right) \]

is the bond position process of the trading strategy \((V_0, \phi, \psi)\) which is self-financing on \(Q(\Omega, \Pi)\).

3.5 Pathwise replication of contingent claims

A non-probabilistic replication result restricted to the non-path-dependent case was obtained by Bick and Willinger [11], as shown in Propositions 3.1, 3.2 in Section 3.1.1 of this thesis. Here, we state the generalization to the replication problem for path-dependent contingent claims.

For any càdlàg function with values in \(S^+(d)\), say \(A \in D([0, T], S^+(d))\), we denote by

\[ Q_A(\Pi) := \left\{ \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi) : [\omega](t) = \int_0^t A(s)ds \quad \forall t \in [0, T] \right\} \]

the set of functions with finite quadratic variation along \(\Pi\) and whose quadratic variation is absolutely continuous with density \(A\). Note that the elements of \(Q_A(\Pi)\) are continuous, by [12].
Proposition 3.9. Consider a path-dependent contingent claim with exercise date $T$ and a continuous payoff functional $H : (\Omega, \| \cdot \|_{\infty}) \to \mathbb{R}$. Assume that there exists a non-anticipative functional $F \in C^{1,2}_{loc}(\mathcal{W}_T) \cap C_{0,0}(\mathcal{W}_T)$ that satisfies, for any $\omega \in Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
DF(t, \omega) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (A(t) \cdot \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega)) &= 0, \quad t \in [0, T), \\
F(T, \omega) &= H(\omega).
\end{aligned}
$$

(3.28)

Then, for any $\tilde{A} \in D([0, T], S^+(d))$, in any price scenario $\omega \in Q_A(\Pi)$ the hedging error of the trading strategy $(F(0, \cdot), \nabla_\omega F)$, self-financing on $Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$, is

$$
\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \text{tr} \left( (A(t) - \tilde{A}(t)) \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \right) dt.
$$

(3.29)

In particular, the strategy $(F(0, \cdot), \nabla_\omega F)$ replicates the claim at maturity on all price scenarios $\omega \in Q_A(\Pi)$ and its portfolio value at any time $t \in [0, T]$ is given by $F(t, w_t)$.

**Proof.** By Proposition [3.7] the gain at time $t \in [0, T]$ of the trading strategy $(F(0, \cdot), \nabla_\omega F)$ along a price path $\omega \in Q(\Omega^0, \Pi)$ is given by $G(t, \omega) = \int_0^T \nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) \cdot d\Pi_\omega$. Moreover, the strategy is pathwise self-financing and, by Remark [3.13] its portfolio value at any time $t \in [0, T]$ is given by

$$
V(t, \omega) = F(0, \omega_0) + \int_0^t \nabla_\omega F(u, \omega_u) \cdot d\Pi_\omega.
$$

In particular, since $F$ is smooth, we can apply the change of variable formula for functionals of continuous paths. By using the functional partial differential equation (3.28) and assuming $\omega \in Q_A(\Pi)$, this gives

$$
V(T, \omega) = F(0, \omega_0) + \int_0^T \nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) \cdot d\Pi_\omega
= F(T, \omega_T) - \int_0^T DF(t, \omega) dt - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \text{tr} \left( \tilde{A}(t) \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \right) dt
= H - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \text{tr} \left( (\tilde{A}(t) - A(t)) \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \right) dt.
$$

\[\square\]
3.6 Pathwise isometries and extension of the pathwise integral

We denote $\hat{Q}(\Omega, \Pi)$ the set of price paths $\omega$ of non-trivial finite quadratic variation, that is $\omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi)$ such that $|\omega|(T) > 0$. Then, given $\omega \in \hat{Q}(\Omega, \Pi)$, we consider the measure space $([0, T], \mathcal{B}([0, T]), d[\omega])$, where $\mathcal{B}([0, T])$ is the family of Borel sets of $[0, T]$ and $d[\omega]$ denotes the finite measure on $[0, T]$ associated with $[\omega]$. Here, we define the space of measurable $\mathbb{R}^d$-valued functions on $[0, T]$ with finite second moment with respect to the measure $d[\omega]$, that is

$$\mathcal{L}^2([0, T], [\omega]) := \left\{ f : ([0, T], \mathcal{B}([0, T])) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^d \text{ measurable :} \right. \int_0^T \langle f(t)'f(t), d[\omega](t) \rangle < \infty \},$$

where $\langle \cdot \rangle$ denotes the Frobenius inner product, i.e. $\langle A, B \rangle = \text{tr}(AB) = \sum_{i,j} A_{i,j} B_{i,j}$. Then, consider the set

$$\mathcal{L}^2(\mathcal{F}, [\omega]) := \left\{ \phi : \mathbb{R}^d\text{-valued, progressively measurable process on } (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}), \phi(\cdot, \omega) \in \mathcal{L}^2([0, T], [\omega]) \right\}$$

and we equip it with the following semi-norm:

$$\|\phi\|_{[\omega], 2}^2 := \int_0^T \langle \phi(t, \omega)'\phi(t, \omega), d[\omega](t) \rangle, \quad \phi \in \mathcal{L}^2(\mathcal{F}, [\omega])$$

We also define the quotient of the space of real-valued paths with finite quadratic variation by its subspace of paths with zero quadratic variation:

$$\bar{Q}(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) := Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) / \text{ker}([\cdot](T)),$$

where $\text{ker}([\cdot](T)) = \{ v \in Q(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi) : [v](T) = 0 \}$.

**Proposition 3.10.** For any price path $\omega \in \hat{Q}(\Omega, \Pi)$, let us define the pathwise integral operator

$$I^\omega : \left( \Sigma(\Pi), \| \cdot \|_{[\omega], 2} \right) \rightarrow \left( \bar{Q}(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi), \sqrt{[\cdot](T)} \right)$$

$$\phi \mapsto \int \phi \cdot d\Pi \omega,$$

(3.30)
where $\bar{\Sigma}(\Pi) := \Sigma(\Pi)/\ker(\|\cdot\|_{\omega,2})$ and

$$\ker(\|\cdot\|_{\omega,2}) = \left\{ z = (z^1, \ldots, z^d) \in \mathcal{L}^2(F, [\omega]) : \forall i, j = 1, \ldots, d, \right.$$ 

$$[\omega]_{i,j} \{ t \in [0, T] : z^i(t, \omega) \neq 0, z^j(t, \omega) \neq 0 \} = 0 \right\}.$$ 

$I^\omega$ is an isometry between two normed spaces:

$$\forall \phi \in \bar{\Sigma}(\Pi), \quad \left[ \int_0^T \phi \cdot d\Pi \omega \right](T) = \int_0^T \langle \phi(t, \omega)^{\sharp}(t, \omega), d[\omega](t) \rangle. \quad (3.31)$$

Moreover, $I^\omega$ admits a closure on $L^2(F, [\omega]) := \mathcal{L}^2(F, [\omega])/\ker(\|\cdot\|_{\omega,2})$, that is the isometry

$$\tilde{I}^\omega : \left( L^2(F, [\omega]), \|\cdot\|_{\omega,2} \right) \rightarrow \left( \bar{Q}(\Omega, \Pi), \sqrt{\cdot}(T) \right), \quad \phi \mapsto \int_0^T \phi \cdot d\Pi \omega. \quad (3.32)$$

Proof. The space $\left( \mathcal{L}^2(F, [\omega]), \|\cdot\|_{\omega,2} \right)$ is a semi-normed space and its quotient with respect to the kernel of $\|\cdot\|_{\omega,2}$ is a normed space, which is also a Banach space by the Riesz-Fischer theorem. Moreover, for any $\phi \in \Sigma(\Pi)$, it holds

$$\int_0^T \langle \phi(t, \omega)^{\sharp}(t, \omega), d[\omega](t) \rangle =$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)} tr \left( \phi(t_i^n, \omega)^{\sharp}(t_i^n, \omega)([\omega](t_i^n) - [\omega](t_{i-1}^n)) \right)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{m(n)} tr \left( \phi(t_i^n, \omega)^{\sharp}(t_i^n, \omega) \lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{t_{i-1}^m < t_j^m \leq t_i^n} (\omega(t_j^m) - \omega(t_{j-1}^m))(\omega(t_j^m) - \omega(t_{j-1}^m)) \right)$$

$$= \lim_{m \to \infty} \sum_{t_j^m \in \mathbb{N}} \sum_{t_{i-1}^m < t_j^m} \left( \int_{t_{i-1}^m}^{t_j^m} \phi(\cdot, \omega) \cdot d\Pi \omega \right)^2$$

$$= \left[ \int_0^T \phi(\cdot, \omega) \cdot d\Pi \omega \right](T).$$

Finally, since $\bar{Q}(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi), \sqrt{\cdot}(T)$ is a Banach space and $\bar{\Sigma}(\Pi)$ is dense in $\left( L^2(F, [\omega]), \|\cdot\|_{\omega,2} \right)$, we can uniquely extend the isometry $I^\omega$ in (3.30) to the isometry $\tilde{I}^\omega$ in (3.32).
3.6. Pathwise isometries and extension of the pathwise integral

**Remark 3.14.** For any $\omega \in \hat{Q}(\Omega, \Pi)$ and any $\phi \in L^2(F, [\omega])$, the pathwise integral of $\phi$ with respect to $\omega$ along $\Pi$ is given by a limit of Riemann sums:

$$\int \phi \cdot d\Pi \omega = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t^n_i \in \pi^m} \phi^n(t^n_i, \omega) \cdot (\omega(t^n_i) - \omega(t^n_{i-1})), \quad (3.33)$$

independently of the sequence $(\phi^n)_{n \geq 1} \in \bar{\Sigma}(\Pi)$ such that

$$\|\phi^n(\cdot, \omega) - \phi(\cdot, \omega)\|_{[\omega], 2} \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0.$$  

Indeed, the definition of the isometry in (3.32) entails that, given $\phi(\cdot, \omega) \in L^2(F, [\omega])$, for any sequence $(\phi^n(\cdot, \omega))_{n \geq 1} \in \bar{\Sigma}(\Pi)$ such that

$$\|\phi^n(\cdot, \omega) - \phi(\cdot, \omega)\|_{[\omega], 2} \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0,$$

then

$$\left[\sum_{t^n_i \in \pi^m} \phi^n(t^n_i, \omega) \cdot (\omega(t^n_i) - \omega(t^n_{i-1})) - \int \phi \cdot d\Pi \omega\right] (T) \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} 0. \quad (3.34)$$

Since $\sqrt{\cdot}(T)$ defines a norm on $\hat{Q}(D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \Pi)$, (3.34) implies that the pathwise integral of $\phi$ with respect to $\omega$ along $\Pi$ is a pointwise limit of Riemann sums:

$$\int \phi \cdot d\Pi \omega = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{t^n_i \in \pi^m} \phi^n(t^n_i, \omega) \cdot (\omega(t^n_i) - \omega(t^n_{i-1})), \quad (3.33)$$

independently of the chosen approximating sequence $(\phi^n)_{n \geq 1}$. 
Chapter 3. PATHWISE CONTINUOUS-TIME TRADING
Chapter 4

Pathwise Analysis of dynamic hedging strategies

The issue of model uncertainty and its impact on the pricing and hedging of derivative securities has been the focus of a lot of research in the quantitative finance literature (see e.g. Avellaneda et al. [4], Bick and Willinger [11], Cont [18], Lyons [71]). Starting with Avellaneda et al.’s Uncertain Volatility Model [4], the literature has focused on the analysis of the performance of pricing and hedging simple payoffs under model uncertainty. The dominant approach in this stream of literature was to replace the assumption of a given, known, probability measure by a family of probability measures which reflects model uncertainty, and look for bounds on prices and performance measures for trading strategies using a worst-case analysis across the family of possible models.

A typical problem to consider is the hedging of a contingent claim. Consider a market participant who issues a contingent claim with payoff $H$ and maturity $T$ on some underlying asset. To price and hedge this claim, the issuer uses a pricing model (say, Black-Scholes), computes the price as

$$V_t = E^Q[H|\mathcal{F}_t]$$

and hedges the resulting profit and loss using the hedging strategy derived from the same model (say, Black-Scholes delta hedge for $H$). However, the
true dynamics of the underlying asset may, of course, be different from the assumed dynamics. Therefore, the hedger is interested in a few questions: How good is the result of the model-based hedging strategy in a realistic scenario? How 'robust' is it to model mis-specification? How does the hedging error relate to model parameters and option characteristics? In 1998, El Karoui et al. [43] provided an answer to these questions in the case of non-path-dependent options in the context of Markovian diffusion models. They provided an explicit formula for the profit and loss of the hedging strategy. El Karoui et al. [43] showed that, when the underlying asset follows a Markovian diffusion
\[ dS_t = \mu(t)S(t)dt + S(t)\sigma_0(t, S(t))dW(t) \quad \text{under } \mathbb{P}^0, \]
a hedging strategy computed in a (mis-specified) local volatility model with volatility \( \sigma \):
\[ dS_t = r(t)S(t)dt + S(t)\sigma(t, S(t))dW(t) \quad \text{under } \mathbb{Q}^{\sigma} \]
leads, under some technical conditions on \( \sigma, \sigma_0 \) to a P&L equal to
\[ \int_0^T \sigma^2(t, S(t)) - \sigma_0^2(t, S(t)) S(t)^2 e^{\int_t^T r(s)ds} \frac{\Gamma(t)}{\partial^2_{xx} f(t, S(t))} dt. \quad (4.1) \]
\( \mathbb{P}^0 \)-almost surely. This fundamental result, called by Mark Davis ‘the most important equation in option pricing theory’ [27], shows that the exposure of a mis-specified delta hedge over a short time period is proportional to the Gamma of the option times the specification error measured in quadratic variation terms.

In this chapter, we contribute to this line of analysis by developing a general framework for analyzing the performance and robustness of delta hedging strategies for path-dependent derivatives across a given set of scenarios. Our approach is based on the pathwise financial framework introduced in Chapter 3, which takes advantage of the non-anticipative functional calculus developed in [21], which extends Föllmer’s pathwise approach to Itô calculus [46].
4.1. Robustness of hedging under model uncertainty: a survey

4.1.1 Hedging under uncertain volatility

Two fundamental references in the literature on model uncertainty are Avellaneda et al. [4] and Lyons [71]. Avellaneda et al. [4] proposed a novel approach to pricing and hedging under ‘volatility risk’: the Uncertain Volatility Model. Instead of looking for the most accurate model (in terms of forward volatility of asset prices), they work under the assumption that the volatility is bounded between two extreme values. In particular, they assume that future stock prices are Itô processes

\[ dS(t) = S(t)(\sigma(t)dW(t) + \mu(t)dt), \]

where \( \mu, \sigma \) are adapted process such that \( \sigma_{\min} \leq \sigma \leq \sigma_{\max} \) and \( W \) is a standard Brownian motion. The problem under consideration was the pric-
Chapter 4. PATHWISE ANALYSIS OF DYNAMIC HEDGING

ing and hedging of a derivative security paying a stream of cash-flows at \( N \) future dates: 
\[ f_1(S(t_1)), \ldots, f_N(S(t_N)) \]
where \( f_j \) are known functions.

By denoting \( \mathcal{P} \) the class of probability measures on the set of paths under which the coordinate process \( S \) has a dynamics (4.2) for some \( \sigma \) between the bounds, then in absence of arbitrage opportunities it is possible to construct an optimal (in the sense that the initial cost is minimal) self-financing portfolio that hedges a short position in the derivative and gives a non-negative value after paying out all the cash flows. This optimal portfolio consists of an initial capital \( p^+(t, S(t)) \) and a risky position \( \partial S p^+(t, S(t)) \), where \( p^+(t, S(t)) = \sup_{\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{P}} \mathbb{E}^\mathcal{P} \left[ \sum_{j=1}^{N} e^{-r(t_j-t)} f_j(S(t_j)) \right] \) is obtained by solving the Black-Scholes-Barenblatt equation

\[
\partial_t p^+(t, S(t)) + \frac{1}{2} S(t)^2 \sigma^* \left( \partial_{SS} p^+(t, S(t)) \right)^2 \partial_{SS} p^+(t, S(t)) = - \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} f_j(S(t)) \delta_{t_k}(t), \quad t < t_N,
\]

with final condition \( p^+(t, S(t)) = f_N(S(t_N)) \) where the function \( \sigma^* \) is defined as \( \sigma^*(s) = \sigma_{\min} \mathbb{1}_{(-\infty,0)}(s) + \sigma_{\max} \mathbb{1}_{[0,\infty)}(s) \).

On the other hand, Lyons [71] analyzes the same problem of Avellaneda et al. [4] but uses a pathwise approach, in view of Föllmer’s formula (1.7).

The security process \( S \) is multi-dimensional and the only assumption is that it has finite quadratic variation at any time \( t \geq 0 \) along the sequence of dyadic partitions and that the quadratic variation function \( A = \{ A_{i,j} \}_{i,j \in I} \) is such that, for all \( u \geq 0 \), \( A(u) \) belongs to the set

\[
O(\lambda, \Lambda, K(u, S(u)) := \{ \gamma = (\gamma_{i,j})_{i,j \in I} \text{ positive symmetric matrix,} \\
\forall v \in \mathbb{R}_+^I, \lambda \gamma^t v K(u, S(u)) v < \Lambda \gamma^t v K(u, S(u)) v \},
\]

where \( \lambda \leq 1, \Lambda \geq 1 \) are given constants and \( K \) is a reference model for the squared volatility of the security, e.g. \( K_{i,j}(t,s) = \sigma_{i,j}(t,s)s_is_j \). The main result in [71] claims that there exists a hedging strategy with an initial investment \( f(0, S(0)) \) that replicates a derivative paying \( F(\tau, S(\tau)) \) at the first occasion \( \tau \) that the security \( (t, S(t)) \) leaves a fixed smooth domain \( U \subset \)
4.1. Robustness of hedging under model uncertainty: a survey

$\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}_+^I$. Moreover, such a strategy returns at any time $t < T$ an excess stream of money equal to

$$\int_0^t \frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{i,j \in I} (\tilde{A}_{i,j}(u, S(u)) - A_{i,j}(u, S(u))\partial_{s_i s_j} f) (u, S(u)) \right) du$$

and at time $T$ it holds exactly $F(T, S(T))$. This is an application of the pathwise Itô formula proven by Föllmer and of the PDE theory, which guarantees that under appropriate conditions on $K$ the Pucci-maximal equation

$$\sup_{a \in O(\lambda, \Lambda, K(u, S(u)))} \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j \in I} a_{i,j} \partial_{s_i s_j} f \right) (u, s) + \partial_u f(u, s) = 0, \quad (u, s) \in U,$n

has a smooth solution $f$ which is also the solution of the linear equation

$$\left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j \in I} \tilde{A}_{i,j} \partial_{s_i s_j} f \right) (u, s) + \partial_u f(u, s) = 0, \quad \tilde{A}_{i,j} \in O(\lambda, \Lambda, K(u, s)).$$

In 1996, Bergman et al. [8] established the properties of European option prices as functions of the model parameters in case the underlying asset follows a one-dimensional diffusion or belongs to a certain restricted class of multi-dimensional diffusions, or stochastic volatility models, by using PDE methods. Their results have implications in the robustness analysis of pricing and hedging derivatives. They assume absence of arbitrage opportunities and that the following stochastic differential equations are well-defined in terms of path-by-path uniqueness of solutions and that parameters allow for the application of the Feynman-Kac theorem. In the one-dimensional case, they assume that the risk-neutral dynamics of the underlying asset process $S$ is

$$dS(t) = S(t)r(t)dt + S(t)\sigma(t, S(t))dW(t), \quad (4.3)$$

where $W$ is a standard Brownian motion. This holds the no-crossing property, i.e.

$$s_2 \geq s_1 \Rightarrow S^{t, s_2}(u) \geq S^{t, s_1}(u), \text{ almost surely, } \forall u \geq t,$$n

where $S^{s,t}$ solves (4.3) with $S^{s,t}(t) = s$. Indeed, fixed a realization $W(\cdot, \omega)$ of the Brownian motion in (4.3) and the correspondent paths $S^{t, s_2}(\cdot, \omega)$ and
Chapter 4. PATHWISE ANALYSIS OF DYNAMIC HEDGING

$S_{t,s}^1(\cdot, \omega)$, if there exists a time $\bar{s} \geq t$ such that $S_{t,s}^2(\bar{s}, \omega) = S_{t,s}^1(\bar{s}, \omega)$, then the two paths will coincide from $\bar{s}$ onwards, by the Markov property. This property allows a claim price to inherit monotonicity from the payoff. In the two-dimensional case, they assume that the risk-neutral dynamics is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{d}S(t) &= S(t)r(t)dt + S(t)\sigma(t, S(t), Y(t))dW^1(t), \\
\text{d}Y(t) &= (\beta(t, S(t), Y(t)) - \lambda(t, S(t), Y(t)))\theta(t, S(t), Y(t))dt + \theta(t, S(t), Y(t))dW^2(t),
\end{align*}
$$

where $W^1, W^2$ are standard Brownian motions with quadratic co-variation $[W^1, W^2](t) = \rho(t, S(t), Y(t))dt$. Despite the fact that, unfortunately, multi-dimensional diffusions do not exhibit in general a similar behavior, there are conditions under which the process $S$ solving (4.5) holds the no-crossing property (4.4) as well. A first important result concerns the inheritance of monotonicity from option prices and establishes bounds on the risky position of a delta-hedging portfolio.

**Theorem 4.1** (Theorem 1 in [8]). Let the payoff function $g$ be one-sided differentiable and at each point $x$ we also allow either $g'(x^-) = \pm \infty$ or $g'(x^+) = \pm \infty$. Suppose that $S$ follows either the one-dimensional diffusion (4.3), or the two-dimensional diffusion (4.5) with the additional property that the drift and diffusion parameters do not depend on $s$. Then

$$
\inf_x (\min\{g'(x^-), g'(x^+)\}) \leq \partial_s v \leq \sup_x (\min\{g'(x^-), g'(x^+)\}),
$$

uniformly in $s, t$, where $v$ is the value of the European claim with payoff $g$.

This follows directly by the no-crossing property and an application of the generalized intermediate value theorem of real analysis. A second important result proves the inheritance of convexity of the claim price from the payoff function, which was already known for proportional one-dimensional diffusions (Black-Scholes setting).

**Theorem 4.2** (Theorem 2 in [8]). Suppose that $S$ follows either the one-dimensional diffusion (4.3), or the two-dimensional diffusion (4.5) with the
4.1. Robustness of hedging under model uncertainty: a survey

additional property that the drift and diffusion parameters do not depend on $s$ and there exists a function $G : [0, \infty)^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$G(t, y) = \sigma(t, s, y)\theta(t, s, y)\rho(t, s, y).$$

Then, if the payoff function is convex (concave), the claims value is a convex (concave) function of the current underlying price.

The proof proceeds by applying the Feynman-Kac theorem to write the claim value as the solution of a Cauchy problem with final datum given by the payoff function $g$; then, by taking the $s$-partial derivative of the PDE, we get a new Cauchy problem for $\partial_s v$ with final datum $g'$. It suffices to apply again the Feynman-Kac theorem, taking into account the hypothesis on coefficients, to write $\partial_s v$ as an expectation of $g'$ composed to a new stochastic process which holds the no-crossing property. Finally, the no-crossing property gives the monotonicity of $\partial_s v$ and equivalently the convexity (concavity) of $v$ in the underlying asset price. A consequence of the previous results in terms of robustness analysis of hedging strategies is the extension of the comparative statics known in a Black-Scholes setting to a one-dimensional diffusion. In particular, an ordering in the volatility functions is preserved in the claim value functions:

**Theorem 4.3** (Theorem 6 in [8]). Let $\sigma_1(t, s) \geq \sigma_2(t, s)$ for all $s, t$ and strict inequality holds in some region, then $v_1(t, s) \geq v_2(t, s)$ for all $s, t$.

This result turns out to be of special interest if one has knowledge of deterministic bounds on the volatility and the claim to hedge is a plain vanilla option, e.g. a call option; in such a case it implies to have both the call option and its Delta bounded respectively by the correspondent Black-Scholes call prices and appropriate Black-Scholes Deltas.

**Theorem 4.4** (Theorem 8 in [8]). If for all $s, t$, $\underline{\sigma}(t) \leq \sigma(t, s) \leq \overline{\sigma}(t)$, then, for all $s, t$,

$$c^{\text{BS}(\underline{\sigma})}(t, s) \leq c(t, s) \leq c^{\text{BS}(\overline{\sigma})}(t, s),$$

$$\partial_s c^{\text{BS}(\sigma)}(t, s) \leq c(t, s) \leq \partial_s c^{\text{BS}(\sigma)}(t, s'),$$
where \( s', s'' \) solve respectively

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{c}_{BS}(\sigma)(t, s) &= \tilde{c}_{BS}(\sigma)(t, s'') + \partial_s \tilde{c}_{BS}(\sigma)(t, s')(s - s''), \\
\tilde{c}_{BS}(\sigma)(t, s) &= \tilde{c}_{BS}(\sigma)(t, s') - \partial_s \tilde{c}_{BS}(\sigma)(t, s')(s' - s).
\end{align*}
\]

The bounds on the delta are an immediate consequence of bounds on the call price and of inherited convexity. When the values of \( s \) and \( c(t, s) \) are observed, these bounds can even be tightened. Finally, they remark that relaxing either the continuity or the Markov property in the one-dimensional case, or the restrictions on the two-dimensional diffusion, the no-crossing property does not need to hold, hence call option prices may exhibit unexpected behaviors.

In 1998, El Karoui et al. \cite{43} derived results analogous to Bergman et al. \cite{8} for both European and American options under a one-dimensional diffusion setting, by an independent approach based on stochastic flows rather than PDEs. While completeness is not assumed, the market is equipped with the strongest form of no-arbitrage condition, namely discounted stock prices are martingales under the objective probability measure \( \mathbb{P} \). The stock price is assumed to follow

\[
dS(t) = r(t)S(t)dt + \sigma(t)S(t)dW(t),
\]

(4.6)

where \( W \) is a standard \(((\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0,T]}, \mathbb{P})\)-Brownian motion, the interest rate \( r \) is a deterministic function in \( L^1([0,T], dt) \) and the volatility process \( \sigma \) is non-negative, \((\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0,T]}\)-adapted, almost surely in \( L^1([0,T], dt) \) and such that the discounted stock price

\[
\frac{S(t)}{M(t)} = S(0) \exp \left( \int_0^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \sigma^2(u)du \right), \quad 0 \leq t \leq T,
\]

is a square-integrable martingale. A trading strategy, or portfolio process, is defined as a bounded adapted process, while a payoff function is defined as a convex function on \( \mathbb{R}_+ \) having bounded one-sided derivatives. Let \( h \) be the payoff function of a European contingent claim, \( \phi \) a portfolio process and \( P \) an adapted process such that \( P(T) = h(S(T)) \) (called a price process), the
tracking error associated with \((P, \phi)\) is defined as 
\[ e := V - P, \]
where \(V\) is the value process of the self-financing portfolio with trading strategy \(\phi\) and initial investment \(V(0) = P(0)\). Then, \((P, \phi)\) is called a

- **replicating strategy** if \(\frac{e}{M} \equiv 0\), in which case the hedger exactly replicates the option at maturity, i.e. \(V(T) = h(S(T))\), and \(P(0) = \mathbb{E}^P \left[ \frac{h(S(T))}{M(T)} \right]\) is an arbitrage price for the claim;

- **super-strategy** if \(\frac{e}{M}\) is non-decreasing, in which case the hedger super-replicates a short position in the claim at maturity, i.e. \(V(T) \geq h(S(T))\), and \(P(0) \geq \mathbb{E}^P \left[ \frac{h(S(T))}{M(T)} \right]\);

- **sub-strategy** if \(\frac{e}{M}\) is non-increasing, hence the hedger super-replicates a long position in the claim and the above inequalities are reversed.

The main purpose in \([43]\) is to analyze the performance of a hedging portfolio derived from a model with mis-specified volatility. First, assuming completeness, they provide two counterexamples of the familiar properties of option prices, when volatility is allowed to be stochastic in a path-dependent manner. On the one hand, a volatility process depending on the initial stock price and the driving Brownian motion may cause the value of a European call to fail the monotonicity property, even if the volatility is non-decreasing in the initial stock price, as it happens for

\[ \sigma(t) = I_{\{W(t) < S(0)\}} I_{\{t \leq T_a\}}, \quad a > 0, \quad T_a := \inf\{t \geq 0, W(t) = a\}. \quad (4.7) \]

On the other hand, even when the underlying dynamics allows the claim value to preserve both monotonicity and convexity, it may happen that an ordering on volatilities is not passed on to the respective call values, e.g.

\[ \sigma(t) \leq \sigma(t) := I_{\{t \leq T_a\}} \quad \text{but} \quad v(x) > \hat{v}(x) = 0 \forall x \in (0, a). \quad (4.8) \]

Given a mis-specified model

\[ dS_\gamma(t) = S_\gamma(t)r(t)dt + S_\gamma(t)\gamma(t, S_\gamma(t))dW(t), \quad (4.9) \]
where the only source of randomness in the volatility is the dependence on the current stock price, the following theorem states the important property of propagation of convexity, also obtained by Bergman et al. [8], for one-dimensional diffusions, but the proof follows a completely independent approach.

**Theorem 4.5** (Theorem 5.2 in [43]). Suppose that \( \gamma : [0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \) is continuous and bounded from above and \( s \mapsto \partial_s(s\gamma(t, s)) \) is Lipschitz-continuous and bounded in \( \mathbb{R}_+ \), uniformly in \( t \in [0, T] \). Then, if \( h \) is a payoff function, the mis-specified claim value

\[
v_\gamma(x) = \mathbb{E}^P[h(S_\gamma(T))|S_\gamma(0) = x]
\]

is a convex function of \( x > 0 \).

Indeed, by denoting \( S^x_\gamma \) the solution of (4.9) with initial value \( S^x_\gamma(0) = x \) and by applying the Itô formula to the process \( \partial_x S^x_\gamma \), the discounted process \( \zeta^x \) turns out to be the exponential martingale of \( (N(t))_{t \in [0, T]} \), \( N(t) = \int_0^t \partial_x(S^x_\gamma(u)\gamma(u, S^x_\gamma(u)))dW(u) \), i.e. \( \zeta^x(t) = \exp \left\{ N(t) - \frac{1}{2} \left\langle N \right\rangle(t) \right\} \). Then, Girsanov’s theorem says that the process \( W^x \), defined by \( W^x(t) = W(t) - \int_0^t \partial_x(S^x_\gamma(u)\gamma(u, S^x_\gamma(u)))du \), is a \( \mathbb{P}^x \)-Brownian motion, where \( \frac{d\mathbb{P}^x}{d\mathbb{P}} = \zeta(T) \). The idea now is to prove that \( v \) has increasing one-sided derivatives. In order to do that, the first step is to bound the incremental ratios \( \frac{v_\gamma(y) - v_\gamma(x)}{y - x} \), for \( y > x \), in such a way to be able to apply on both sides a version of Fatou’s lemma. This gives

\[
\mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^x}[h'(S^x_\gamma(T))+] \leq \lim \inf_{y \uparrow x} \frac{v_\gamma(y) - v_\gamma(x)}{y - x} \leq \lim \sup_{y \uparrow x} \frac{v_\gamma(y) - v_\gamma(x)}{y - x} \leq \mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^x}[h'(S^x_\gamma(T))+],
\]

and an analogous estimate holds for \( y < x \), \( y \searrow x \), thus

\[
v_\gamma'(x) = \mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^x}[h'(S^x_\gamma(T))],
\]

Let us notice that, to achieve the above bounds, it is used the same no-crossing property (4.4) which is fundamental in [8]. Lastly, to remove the
dependence on $x$ of the expectation operators, they define a new process $\tilde{S}^x$, whose law under $P$ is the same as the law of $S^x_\gamma$ under $P^x$ and which still holds the no-crossing property, hence rewrite $v'_\gamma(x) = \mathbb{E}^P[h'(\tilde{S}^x(T))].$

From the last argument it also follows that the one-sided derivatives of $v$ have the same bounds as $h$. Under additional requirements, El Karoui et al. \cite{ref3} proved a robustness principle similar to Theorem 4.2 but also providing the explicit formula of the tracking error, which is fundamental to monitor hedging risks.

**Theorem 4.6.** Under the assumptions of Theorem 4.5, let $r, \gamma$ be H"older-continuous in their arguments. Then, if

$$\sigma(t) \leq \gamma(t, S(t))$$

for Lebesgue-almost all $t \in [0, T]$, $P - a.s.$, \hspace{1cm} (4.10)

then $(P_\gamma, \Delta_\gamma)$ is a super-strategy, where $P_\gamma(t) := v_\gamma(t, S(t))$ and $\Delta_\gamma(t) := \partial_x v_\gamma(t, S(t))$ for all $t \in [0, T]$. If the volatilities satisfy the reversed inequality in (4.10), then $(P_\gamma, \Delta_\gamma)$ is a sub-strategy. Moreover, the tracking error associated with $(V_\Delta, P_\gamma)$ is

$$e_\gamma(t) = M(t) \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \left( \gamma^2(u, S(u)) - \sigma^2(u) \right) S^2(u) \partial_{xx} v_\gamma(u, S(u)) \frac{du}{M(u)}. \hspace{1cm} (4.11)$$

Indeed, under the assumptions, the value function $v_\gamma$ defined by

$$v_\gamma(t, x) := \mathbb{E} \left[ e^{-\int_t^T r(u)du} h(S^t_\gamma(T)) \right], \hspace{1cm} t \in [0, T], \hspace{0.2cm} x > 0,$$

where $S^t_\gamma$ is the solution of (4.9) with initial condition $S^t_\gamma(0) = x$, belongs to $C^{1,2}([0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+) \cap C([0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+)$ and satisfies the partial differential equation $L_\gamma v_\gamma = 0$ on $[0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+$, with the operator defined by

$$L_\gamma f(t, x) := \partial_t f(t, x) + r(t) x \partial_x f(t, x) + \frac{1}{2} \gamma^2(t, x) x^2 \partial_{xx} f(t, x) - r(t) f(t, x). \hspace{1cm} (4.12)$$

Then, the value $V_\Delta$ of the self-financing portfolio $\Delta_\gamma$ will evolve according to

$$dV_\Delta(t) = r(t)V_\Delta(t)dt + \Delta_\gamma(t)(dS(t) - r(t)S(t)dt),$$
whereas the price process is governed by

\[
dP_\gamma(t) = r(t)P_\gamma(t)dt + \Delta_\gamma(t)(dS(t) - r(t)S(t)dt) \\
+ \frac{1}{2} \left( \sigma^2(t) - \gamma^2(t, S(t)) \right) S^2(t) \partial_{xx} v_\gamma(t, S(t)) dt.
\]

Finally, the convexity of \( v_\gamma \) and the domination of the mis-specified volatility over the ‘true’ one end the proof. Important remarks about weakening the assumption (4.10) are reported in the appendix of [43]. By the way, under the regularity requirements, equation (4.11) for the discounted tracking error is still true, independently of the domination of volatilities. If \( \sigma, \gamma \) are both non-negative, square-integrable and deterministic functions of time, satisfying

\[
\left( \int_t^T \sigma^2(u)du \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \left( \int_t^T \gamma^2(u)du \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{for all } 0 \leq t \leq T, \quad (4.13)
\]

then the mis-specified value of the claim succeeds to dominate the true price, but the mis-specified delta-hedging portfolio is not guaranteed to replicate the option at maturity, in the sense that the expected tracking error under the market probability measure can be negative.

In 1998, Hobson [57] also addressed the monotonicity and super-replication properties of options prices under mis-specified models. The theorems presented in [57] are similar to the results found in [8] and [43], but the author uses a further different approach, based on coupling techniques.

The setting is that of a continuous-time frictionless market with finite horizon \( T \), where the interest rate is set to \( r = 0 \) and the stock price process \( S \) is a weak solution to the stochastic differential equation

\[
dS(t) = S(t)\sigma(t)dB(t), \quad S(0) = s_0, \quad (4.14)
\]

for some standard Brownian motion \( B \) on a stochastic basis \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P}) \) and an adapted volatility process \( \sigma \). For the moment, completeness of the model is assumed, so that options prices are given by \( \mathbb{P} \)-expectations of the respective claims at maturity. The first main theorem goes under the name of “option price monotonicity”. 
4.1. Robustness of hedging under model uncertainty: a survey

Theorem 4.7. Let $h$ be a convex function and consider two candidate models for (4.14), namely

\[ \sigma(\cdot) = \tilde{\sigma}(\cdot, S(\cdot)) \quad \text{or} \quad \sigma(\cdot) = \hat{\sigma}(\cdot, S(\cdot)), \]

such that $\hat{\sigma}(t, s) \geq \tilde{\sigma}(t, s)$ for all $t \in [0, T], s \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, the European option with payoff $h(S(T))$ has a higher value under the model with volatility $\hat{\sigma}$ than under the one with volatility $\tilde{\sigma}$.

The proof is based on the joint application on the Brownian representation of local martingales and a coupling argument. Precisely, fixed a Brownian motion $W$ issued of $s_0$, define, for each model, a strictly increasing process $\tau$ as the solution, for almost all $\omega \in \Omega$, of the ordinary differential equation

\[ \frac{d\tau(t; \omega)}{dt} = \frac{1}{W^2(t; \omega)\sigma^2(\tau(t; \omega), W(t; \omega))}, \quad t \in [0, T]. \]

Then, define $A(\cdot; \omega)$ as the inverse of $\tau(\cdot; \omega)$ and consider the process $P = W(A)$ (again one for each model). This is a local martingale whose quadratic variation has time-derivative given by

\[ \partial_t A(t) = W^2(A(t))\sigma^2(\tau(A(t)), W(A(t))) = P^2(t)\sigma^2(t, P(t)) \]

Thus, $P$ is a weak solution to the SDE $dP(t) = P(t)\sigma(t, P(t))dB$ for some Brownian motion $B$. By this representation, $\hat{A} \geq \tilde{A}$ on $[0, T]$, almost surely. Indeed, at time 0, $\hat{P}(0) = \tilde{P}(0) = s_0$ and $\hat{A}(0) = \tilde{A}(0) = 0$; afterward, if $\hat{P}(t) = \tilde{P}(t)$ then $d\hat{A}(t) \geq d\tilde{A}(t)$ and if $\hat{A}(t) = \tilde{A}(t)$ then $\hat{P}(t) = \tilde{P}(t)$.

Finally, by Jensen’s inequality and properties of the Brownian motion,

\[ \mathbb{E}[h(\hat{P}(T))] \geq \mathbb{E} \left[ h \left( \mathbb{E} \left[ \hat{P}(T) \mid \mathcal{F}_{\hat{A}(T)} \right] \right) \left| \mathcal{F}_{\tilde{A}(T)} \right) \right] \]

Notice that Hobson’s method allows to generalize the statement of the theorem in two directions:

- it does not require the completeness assumption, which is used only in the last step of proof, when pricing the European claim by taking the
expectation under the risk-neutral probability $\mathbb{P}$, and can be omitted provided an agreed pricing measure;

- it has not to restrict to diffusion models, as the same construction applies also to the case of path-dependent volatility $\sigma(t) = \sigma(t, S_t)$, provided that $\tau$ and its inverse can be defined and by assuming that, for all $t \in [0, T], s \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\hat{\sigma}(t, \hat{s}_t) \geq \tilde{\sigma}(t, \tilde{s}_t) \quad \forall \hat{s}_t, \tilde{s}_t \in \{\{f(u \wedge t)\}_{u \in [0, T]}, f(0) = s_0, f(t) = s\}$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.15)

The contradiction that seems to arise with the counterexample (4.8) in [43] is not consistent here. In fact, in [43] the price process is defined to be the strong solution of the SDE (4.6), so that the coupling argument could not be applied, while in [57] it is instead a weak solution. In effect, what matters to the aim of derivative pricing and hedging is the law of the price process, rather than its relation with a specific Brownian motion.

The second property of option prices addressed by Hobson is the preservation of convexity from the payoff to the value function. This is then used to derive the so-called ‘super-replication property’.

**Theorem 4.8.** Suppose the asset price follows the complete diffusion model (4.14) where the volatility function has sufficient regularity to ensure that the solution is unique-in-law (e.g. $s \mapsto s\sigma(t, s)$ Lipschitz) and a true martingale (e.g. $\sigma$ bounded). If $h$ is a convex payoff function, then the claim value at each time prior to maturity is convex in the current underlying price.

The coupling argument used here is the following. Take $0 < z < y < x$ and define $X, Y, Z$ as the solutions to (4.14) with respect to independent Brownian motions and starting point respectively $x, y, z$ at time 0. Denote the crossing times with $H_X := \inf\{t \geq 0, X(t) = Y(t)\}$ and $H_Y := \inf\{t \geq 0, Y(t) = Z(t)\}$, and $\tau := H_X \wedge H_Y \wedge T$. Conditionally on $\{\tau = H_X\}$ (respectively on $\tau = H_Y$), $X(T) \overset{d}{=} Y(T)$ (respectively $Y(T) \overset{d}{=} Z(T)$), while
on \( \{ \tau = T \} \) we have \( Z(T) < Y(T) < X(T) \). Thus, by using the identities in law and the convexity of \( h \),

\[
E[(X(T) - Z(T))h(Y(T))] \leq E[(Y(T) - Z(T))h(X(T))] \\
+ E[(X(T) - Y(T))h(Z(T))].
\]

Then, the independence of the driving Brownian motions gives

\[
(x - z)E[h(Y(T))] \leq (x - y)E[h(Z(T))] + (y - z)E[h(X(T))],
\]

that is the convexity of the option price, by arbitrariness of starting points.

It should be noticed that this proof cannot be extended to non-diffusion models, where the identities in law could not be used.

The same property is also proved in [8] and [43], however both require more restrictive conditions, such as the differentiability of the diffusion coefficient \( s^2 \sigma^2(t, s) \) and a bounded (possibly one-sided) derivative for \( h \). In case \( h \) has a derivative bounded by a constant \( C \) on \([0, \infty)\), then bounds on the option price and its spatial derivative at any time \( t \in [0, T] \) are a direct consequence:

\[
h(0) - CS(t) \leq v(t, S(t)) \leq h(0) + CS(t), \quad |\partial_s v(t, S(t))| \leq C.
\]

In [43] the property of inherited convexity is used to prove robustness of a delta-hedging portfolio, accordingly to their definition. Hobson reproduces the same steps to prove the ‘super-replication property’, stated as follows.

**Theorem 4.9.** Under the model assumption of Theorem 4.8, assume also that option prices from the model are of class \( C^{1,2}([0, T] \times \mathbb{R}) \) (e.g. \( \sigma > 0 \) and Hölder continuous). If the model volatility \( \sigma \) dominates the true volatility \( \hat{\sigma} \), i.e. \( \sigma(t, s) \geq \hat{\sigma}(t, s) \) for all \( t \in [0, T] \), \( s \in \mathbb{R} \), and if the payoff function is convex, then pricing and hedging according to the model will super-replicate the option payout.

In order to prove that the model price dominates the true price, the portfolio value process, in particular the stochastic integral \( \int_0^t \partial_s v(u, S(u))dS(u) \),
has to be a martingale. In case of a payoff function with bounded derivative, this is achieved by assuming that $\mathbb{E} \left[ \left( \int_0^T S^2(u) \sigma^2(u, S(u)) du \right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \right] < \infty$, which makes $S$ itself a true martingale, even if not necessarily square-integrable.

### 4.1.2 Robust hedging of discretely monitored options

More recently, Schied and Stadje revisited the notion of robustness by considering the performance of a model-based hedging strategy when applied to the realized observed path of the underlying asset price, rather than to some supposedly ‘true’ model, inspired by the Föllmer’s pathwise Itô calculus. Schied and Stadje studied the performance of delta hedging strategies for a path-dependent discretely monitored derivative, obtained under a local volatility model.

The stock price process $S$ is assumed to follow a local volatility model where the volatility process is a deterministic function of time and the current stock price,

$$dS(t) = S(t)\sigma(t, S(t))dW(t), \quad (4.16)$$

where the local volatility function is assumed to satisfy the following regularity conditions.

**Assumption 4.1.**

- $\sigma \in C^1([0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_+, \mathbb{R}_+)$, bounded above and below away from 0;
- $s \mapsto s\sigma(t, s)$ Lipschitz continuous, uniformly in $t \in [0, T]$.

The derivatives considered here have a path-dependent claim of the form $H(S) = h(S(t_1), \ldots, S(t_n))$, where $0 = t_0 < t_1 < \ldots t_n \leq T$ and $h : [0, \infty)^n \to [0, \infty)$ is continuous and satisfies $h(x) \leq C(1 + |x|^p)$ for all $x \in [0, \infty)^n$ and certain $C, p \geq 0$, in which case $h$ is referred to as a payoff function.
4.1. Robustness of hedging under model uncertainty: a survey

Using the Markov property, the price at time \( t \in [t_k, t_{k+1}) \) is given by

\[
v(t, s_1, \ldots, s_k, s) = \mathbb{E}[H(S) \mid S(t_1) = s_1, \ldots, S(t_k) = s_k, S(t) = s] = \mathbb{E}[h(s_1, \ldots, s_k, S(t_{k+1}), \ldots, S(t_n)) \mid S(t) = s]
\] (4.17)

We denote

\[
v(t, x) := \sum_{k=1}^{n} \mathds{1}_{[t_k, t_{k+1})}(t) v(t, s_1, \ldots, s_k, s), \quad x \in C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+)
\]

is a deterministic function matching the observed stock price path, i.e. \( x(t_1) = s_1, \ldots, x(t_k) = s_k, x(t) = s \). It is also assumed that all observed price paths are continuous and have finite quadratic variation along a fixed sequence of time partitions \( \{\pi^n\}_{n \geq 1}, \pi^n = (t^n_i)_{i=0, \ldots, m(n)}, 0 = t^n_0 < \ldots < t^n_{m(n)} = T \) for all \( n \geq 1 \), with mesh going to 0. The following result shows the regularity of the value function and makes use of the F"ollmer’s pathwise calculus presented in Chapter 1.

**Proposition 4.1.** Let \( h \) be a payoff function. Under Assumption 4.1, the map \( (t, s) \mapsto v(t, x) \) belongs to \( C^{1,2}([0, T] \times [0, \infty)) \) and satisfies the partial differential equation

\[
\partial_t v(t, x) + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2(t, s) s^2 \partial_{ss} v(t, x) = 0, \quad t \in \bigcup_{k=0}^{n-1} (t_k, t_{k+1}), s \in [0, \infty). \quad (4.18)
\]

Furthermore, the F"ollmer integral \( \int_0^T \partial_s v(t, x) dx(t) \) is well defined and the pathwise Itô formula holds:

\[
v(T, x) = v(0, x) + \int_0^T \partial_s v(t, x) dx(t) + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \partial_{ss} v(t, x) d\langle x \rangle(t) + \int_0^T \partial_t v(t, x) dt.
\]

The regularity and the PDE characterization of the value function are proven by backward induction and using the following standard result for a European non-path-dependent option with payoff \( h : [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}_+ \), that is: let \( v(t, s) := \mathbb{E}[h(S(T)) \mid S(t) = s] \), then \( v \in C^{1,2}([0, T] \times (0, \infty)) \) satisfies a polynomial growth condition in \( s \) uniformly in \( t \in [0, T] \) and solves the Cauchy problem (4.18) on \([0, T] \times (0, \infty) \). So, at step 1, let \( t \in [t_{n-1}, t_n) \), the problem reduces to the standard case. Then, at each step
Chapter 4. PATHWISE ANALYSIS OF DYNAMIC HEDGING

$k > 1$, let $t \in [t_{n-k}, t_{n-k+1})$, define the auxiliary function

$$h_k(s) = \mathbb{E}[h(s_1, \ldots, s_{n-k}, s, S(t_{n-k+2}), \ldots, S(t_n)) \mid S(t_{n-k+1}) = s],$$

which is a payoff function such that $v(t, s_1, \ldots, s_{n-k}, s) = \mathbb{E}[h_k(S(t_{n-k+1})) \mid S(t) = s]$ and again the standard result applies.

Using the same notation above for $x$ and $H$, Schied and Stadje defined the delta-hedging strategy for $H$ obtained from the model (4.16) to be robust if, when the model volatility overestimates the market volatility, i.e.

$$\int^T_0 \sigma^2(u, x(u)) x^2(u) du \geq \langle x \rangle(t) - \langle x \rangle(r) \quad \text{for all } 0 \leq r < t \leq T,$$

or equivalently $\sigma(t, x(t)) \geq \sqrt{\zeta(t)}$, where $\langle x \rangle(t) = \int^T_0 \zeta(u) x^2(u) du$ and $\zeta \geq 0$, for Lebesgue-almost every $t \in [0, T]$, then

$$v(0, x) + \int^T_0 \partial_s v(u, x) d^H x(u) \geq H(x). \quad (4.19)$$

They pointed out that, under the assumptions of Proposition 4.1, the positivity of the option Gamma leads to a robust delta-hedging strategy. An application of this first basic result is the generalized Black-Scholes model, where the value function of any convex payoff function is again convex and hence the corresponding delta hedge is robust. This follows directly from the fact that a geometric Brownian motion with time-dependent volatility is affine in its starting point and convexity is invariant under affine transformations.

However, in a general local volatility model, convexity of a payoff function does not guarantee the robustness property. Indeed, the main theorem in [98] spots sufficient conditions on the payoff function resulting in convexity for the value function and consequent robustness for the delta hedge.

**Theorem 4.10.** If the payoff function $h$ is directionally convex, i.e. for all $i = 1, \ldots, n$ the map $x_i \mapsto h(x_1, \ldots, x_i, \ldots, x_n)$ is convex and has increasing right-derivative with respect to any other component $j = 1, \ldots, n$, then, for all $k = 1, \ldots, n$ and for any $t \in [t_k, t_{k+1})$, the value function $(s_1, \ldots, s_k, s) \mapsto v(t, s_1, \ldots, s_k, s)$ is also directionally convex and hence convex in the last variable, and the delta-hedging strategy is robust.
4.2. **Robustness and the hedging error formula**

The crucial step in the proof of the above theorem is the inherited directional convexity of a map of the form

\[ u(s_1, \ldots, s_n) = \mathbb{E}[h(s_1, \ldots, s_{n-1}, S(T)) \mid S(t) = s_n], \]

which is proven by means of the notion of Wright convexity. Furthermore, given a directionally convex function of \( k + 1 \) arguments \( u(s_1, \ldots, s_{k+1}) \), the contraction \( \tilde{u}(s_1, \ldots, s_k) = u(s_1, \ldots, s_k, s_k) \) is also directionally convex. By this remark, the proof ends by induction on \( k = 0, \ldots, n \), noticing that for \( t \in [t_{n-k}, t_{n-k+1}) \) the value function can be written as

\[ v(t, s_1, \ldots, s_{n-k}, s) = \mathbb{E}[v(t_{n-k+1}s_1, \ldots, s_{n-k}, S(t_{n-k+1}), S(t_{n-k+1})) \mid S(t) = s]. \]

A counter-example consisting of a local volatility model where the delta hedge fails to be robust in case of any convex payoff which is not identically linear and is positively homogeneous, implies that every payoff function that is both positively homogeneous and directionally convex must be linear.

The results obtained in [98] in the context of robustness of hedging strategies are specific to one-dimensional local volatility models. In more general models, the issue of propagation of convexity is quite intricate: in multivariate local volatility models, the convexity of prices of European options depends on the volatility matrix and value functions of European call options may fail to be convex.

**4.2 Robustness and the hedging error formula**

In this thesis, we consider the following problem: a market participant sells a path-dependent derivative with maturity \( T \) and payoff functional \( H \) and uses a model of preference to compute the price of such derivative and the corresponding hedging strategy.

This situation is typical of financial institutions issuing derivatives and subject to risk management constraints. The behavior of the underlying asset
during the lifetime of the derivative may or may not correspond to a typical trajectory of the model used by the issuer for constructing the hedging strategy. More importantly, the hedger only experiences a single path for the underlying so it is not even clear what it means to assess whether the model correctly describes the risk along this path. The relevant question for the hedger is to assess, ex-post, the performance of the hedging strategy in the realized scenario and to quantify, ex-ante, the magnitude of possible losses across different plausible risk scenarios. This calls for a scenario analysis— or pathwise analysis— of the performance of such hedging strategies. In fact such scenario analysis, or stress testing, of hedging strategies are routinely performed in financial institutions using simulation methods, but a theoretical framework for such a pathwise analysis was missing.

In the general case where either the payoff or the volatility are path-dependent, the value at time $t$ of the claim will be a non-anticipative functional of the path of the underlying asset.

In this chapter, we keep to the one-dimensional case and we work on the canonical space of continuous paths $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$, where $\Omega := C([0, T], \mathbb{R}^+)$, $\mathcal{F}$ is the Borel sigma-field and $\mathcal{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0, T]}$ is the natural filtration of the coordinate process $S$, given by $S(u, \omega) = \omega(u)$ for all $\omega \in \Omega, t \in [0, T]$. The coordinate process $S$ represents the asset price process and we assume that the hedger’s model consists in a square-integrable martingale measure for $S$:

**Assumption 4.2.** The market participant prices and hedges derivative instruments assuming that the underlying asset price $S$ evolves according to

$$dS(t) = \sigma(t)S(t)dW(t), \text{ i.e.}$$

$$S(t) = S(0)e^{\int_0^t \sigma(u)dW(u)-\frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \sigma(u)^2 du}, \quad t \in [0, T], \quad (4.20)$$

where $W$ is a standard Brownian motion on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$ and the volatility $\sigma$ is a non-negative $\mathbb{F}$-adapted process such that $S$ is a square-integrable $\mathbb{P}$-martingale.

This assumption includes the majority of models commonly used for pricing and hedging derivatives. The assumption of square-integrability is not
4.2. Robustness and the hedging error formula

essential and may be removed by localization arguments but we will retain it
to simplify some arguments. Note that this is an assumption on the pricing
model used by the hedger, not an assumption on the evolution of the under-
lying asset itself. We will not make any assumption on the process generating
the dynamics of the underlying asset.

Assumption 4.3. Let \( H : D([0, T], \mathbb{R}) \mapsto \mathbb{R} \) be the payoff of a path-dependent
derivative with maturity \( T \), such that \( \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P}[|H(S_T)|^2] < \infty \).

Under Assumptions 4.2 and 4.3, the replicating portfolio for \( H \) is given
by the delta-hedging strategy \((Y(0), \nabla S Y)\) and its value process coincides
with \( Y \).

We denote by

\[
\text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P}) := \{ \omega \in \Omega : \mathbb{P}(S_T \in V) > 0 \ \forall \text{neighborhood } V \ \text{of } \omega \ \text{in } (\Omega, \| \cdot \|_\infty) \},
\]

the topological support of \((S, \mathbb{P})\) in \((\Omega, \| \cdot \|_\infty)\), that is the smallest closed set
in \((\Omega, \| \cdot \|_\infty)\) such that it contains \( S_T \) with \( \mathbb{P} \)-measure equal to one. Since \( S \)
may not have full support in \((\Omega, \| \cdot \|_\infty)\), we will need to specifically work on
the support of \( S \) in order to pass from equations that hold \( \mathbb{P} \)-almost surely
for functionals of the price process \( S \) to pathwise equations for functionals
defined on the space of stopped paths.

Throughout this chapter, we consider a fixed sequence of partitions \( \Pi =
(\pi^n)_{n \geq 1}, \pi^n = \{0 = t^n_0 < t^n_1 < \ldots, t^n_{m(n)} = T\} \), with mesh going to 0 as \( n \) goes
to \( \infty \). For paths of absolutely continuous finite quadratic variation along \( \Pi \),
we define the local realized volatility as

\[
\sigma^{\text{mkt}} : [0, T] \times \mathcal{A} \to \mathbb{R}, \quad (t, \omega) \mapsto \sigma^{\text{mkt}}(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)} \sqrt{\frac{d}{dt}[\omega](t)},
\]

where

\[
\mathcal{A} := \{ \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi), \ t \mapsto [\omega](t) \text{ is absolutely continuous} \}.
\]

Our main results apply to paths with finite quadratic variation along the
given sequence \( \Pi \) of partitions, as it is a necessary assumption in the theory
of functional pathwise calculus. However, as remarked in Subsection 3.2.1, this assumption is also reasonable in terms of avoiding undesirable strategies that carry infinite gain with bounded initial capital on some paths.

If \( Y \in C^{1,2}_b(S) \), with \( Y(t) = F(t, S_t) \) \( dt \times d\mathbb{P} \)-almost surely, the universal hedging equation (2.13) holds and the asset position of the hedger’s portfolio at almost any time \( t \in [0, T] \) and for \( \mathbb{P} \)-almost all scenarios \( \omega \), is given by \( \nabla S Y(t, \omega) = \nabla \omega F(t, \omega) \). Note that, even if the non-anticipative functional \( F : \mathcal{W}_T \mapsto \mathbb{R} \) does depend on the choice of the functional representation \( F \) of \( Y \) such that \( Y(t) = F(t, \omega) \) for Lebesgue-almost all \( t \in [0, T] \) and \( \mathbb{P} \)-almost all \( \omega \), the process \( \nabla S Y(\cdot) = \nabla \omega F(\cdot, S) \) does not, up to indistinguishable processes. Moreover, if it also satisfies \( F \in C^{0,0}_0(W_T) \), according to Proposition 3.7 the trading strategy \((F(0, \cdot), \nabla \omega F)\) is self-financing on \( Q(\Omega, \Pi) \) and allows a path-by-path computation of the gain from trading as a Föllmer integral. We will therefore restrict to this class of pathwise trading strategies, which are of main interest:

\[
\mathbb{V} := \{ \nabla \omega F, \quad F \in C^{1,2}_{loc}(W_T) \cap C^{0,0}(W_T) \}. \tag{4.22}
\]

Note that \( \mathbb{V} \) has a natural structure of vector space; we call its elements vertical 1-forms.

In line with Remark 3.13 the portfolio value of a self-financing trading strategy \((V_0, \phi)\) with asset position a vertical 1-form \( \phi = \nabla \omega F \) and initial investment \( V_0 = F(0, \cdot) \) will be given by, at any time \( t \in [0, T] \) and in any scenario \( \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi) \),

\[
V(t, \omega) = F(0, \omega) + \int_0^t \nabla \omega F(u, \omega) d\Pi \omega(u).
\]

The portfolio value functional \( V(T, \cdot) \) at the maturity date can be different from the payoff \( H \) with strictly positive \( \mathbb{P} \)-measure. What is important about this mis-replication is the sign of the difference between the portfolio value at maturity and the payoff in a given scenario. So, we give the following definitions.

**Definition 4.11.** The hedging error of a trading strategy \((V_0, \phi)\) such that \( \phi \in \mathbb{V} \) for a derivative with payoff \( H \) and in a scenario \( \omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi) \) is the
4.2. Robustness and the hedging error formula

value

\[ V(T, \omega) - H(\omega_T) = V_0(\omega) + \int_0^T \phi(u, \omega) d\Pi(\omega(u)) - H(\omega_T). \]

\((V_0, \phi)\) is called a super-strategy for \(H\) on \(U \subset Q(\Omega, \Pi)\) if its hedging error for \(H\) is non-negative on \(U\), i.e.

\[ V_0(\omega) + \int_0^T \phi(u, \omega) d\Pi(\omega(u)) \geq H(\omega_T) \quad \forall \omega \in U. \]

**Definition 4.12.** Given \(F \in C_{b}^{1,2}(W_T) \cap C_{l}^{0,0}(W_T)\) such that \(Y(t) = F(t, S_t) dt \times d\mathbb{P}\) almost surely, the delta-hedging strategy \((Y(0), \nabla_S Y)\) for \(H\) is said to be robust on \(U \subset Q(\Omega, \Pi)\) if \((F(0, \cdot), \nabla_\omega F)\) is a super-strategy for \(H\) on \(U\).

**Proposition 4.2** (Pathwise hedging error formula). If there exists a non-anticipative functional \(F : \Lambda_T \to \mathbb{R}\) such that

\[ F(0, S_0), \nabla_\omega F \in C_{l}^{1,2}(W_T) \cap C_{l}^{0,0}(W_T), \quad DF \in C_{l}^{0,0}(W_T), \quad (4.23) \]

\[ F(t, S_t) = \mathbb{E}_\mathbb{P}[H(S_T)|\mathcal{F}_t] \quad dt \times d\mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.} \quad (4.24) \]

then, the hedging error of the delta hedge \((F(0, S(0)), \nabla_\omega F)\) along any path \(\omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi) \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})\) is explicitly given by

\[ V_0(\omega) + \int_0^T \nabla_\omega F(u, \omega) d\Pi(\omega(u)) - H(\omega_T) \]

\[ = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \sigma(t, \omega)^2 \omega^2(t) \nabla_\omega^2 F(t, \omega) dt - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \nabla_\omega^2 F(t, \omega) d[\omega](t). \]

In particular, if \(\omega \in A \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})\), then

\[ V_0(\omega) + \int_0^T \nabla_\omega F(u, \omega) d\Pi(\omega(u)) - H(\omega_T) \]

\[ = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\sigma(t, \omega)^2 - \sigma_{mkt}(t, \omega)^2) \omega^2(t) \nabla_\omega^2 F(t, \omega) dt. \quad (4.25) \]

Furthermore, if for all \(\omega \in U \subset (A \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P}))\) and Lebesgue-almost every \(t \in [0, T]\),

\[ \nabla_\omega^2 F(t, \omega) \geq 0 \quad \text{(resp.} \leq), \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma(t, \omega) \geq \sigma_{mkt}(t, \omega) \quad \text{(resp.} \leq), \quad (4.26) \]

then the delta hedge for \(H\) is robust on \(U\).
Chapter 4. PATHWISE ANALYSIS OF DYNAMIC HEDGING

Proof. Assumptions \((4.23)-(4.24)\) imply \(Y \in \mathbb{C}^{1,2}(S)\), with \(Y(t) = F(t, S_t)\) \(dt \times d\mathbb{P}\)-almost surely, thus \(F(\cdot, S)\) satisfies the functional Itô formula for functionals of continuous semimartingales \((2.1)\). Moreover, by Proposition \(2.6\) the universal pricing equation holds: for all \(\omega \in \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})\),

\[
\mathcal{D}F(t, \omega) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) \sigma^2(t, \omega) \omega^2(t) = 0 \quad \forall t \in [0, T) \tag{4.27}
\]

By Proposition \(3.7\) and using the pathwise change of variable formula for functionals of continuous paths (Theorem \(1.10\)), the value of the hedger’s portfolio at maturity is given by, for all \(\omega \in Q(\Omega, \Pi)\),

\[
V(T, \omega) = F(0, \omega_0) + \int_0^T \nabla \omega F(t, \omega) d\Pi(t) - 1 \int_0^T \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) d[\omega](t). \tag{4.28}
\]

Then, using the equations \((4.28)\) and \((4.27)\), we get an explicit expression for the hedging error along any path \(\omega\) in \(\mathcal{A} \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})\) as

\[
V(T, \omega) - H = \int_0^T \left( \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2(u, \omega) \omega^2(u) \nabla^2 \omega F(u, \omega) - \frac{1}{2} \nabla^2 \omega F(u, \omega) d[\omega](t) \right) du
- \int_0^T \mathcal{D}F(u, \omega) dt - \int_0^T \frac{1}{2} \sigma(u, \omega)^2 \omega^2(u) \nabla^2 \omega F(u, \omega) du
= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left( \sigma(u, \omega)^2 - \sigma_{\text{mkt}}^2(t, \omega)^2 \right) \omega^2(u) \nabla^2 \omega F(u, \omega) du.
\]

Moreover, the inequalities \((4.26)\) imply that, for all \(\omega \in U\),

\[
V(T, \omega) \geq H - \int_0^T \mathcal{D}F(t, \omega) dt - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \sigma(t, \omega)^2 \omega^2(t) \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) dt
= H.
\]

This proves the robustness of the delta hedge on \(U\). \(\square\)

Remark 4.13. Proposition \(4.2\) simply requires the price trajectory to have an absolutely continuous quadratic variation in a pathwise sense, but does not assume any specific probabilistic model. Nevertheless, it applies to any model whose sample paths fulfill these properties almost-surely: this applies
in particular to diffusion models and other models based on continuous semimartingales analyzed in [4, 8, 43, 57]. However, note that we do not even require the price process to be a semimartingale. For example, our results also hold when the price paths are generated by a (functional of a) fractional Brownian motion with index $H \geq \frac{1}{2}$.

### 4.3 The impact of jumps

The presence of jumps in the price trajectory affects the hedging error of the delta-hedging strategy in an unfavorable way.

**Proposition 4.3** (Impact of jumps on delta hedging). If

$$\exists F \in C^{1,2}_b(\Lambda_T) \cap C^{0,0}(W_T) : F(t,S_t) = \mathbb{E}^P[H(S_T)|\mathcal{F}_t] \ dt \times d\mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.} \ (4.29)$$

then, for any $\omega \in Q(D([0,T], \mathbb{R}_+, \Pi)$ such that $[\omega]^c$ is absolutely continuous, the hedging error of the delta hedge $(F(0,S(0)), \nabla \omega F)$ for $H$ is explicitly given by

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left( \sigma(t,\omega)^2 - \sigma^\text{mkt}(t,\omega)^2 \right) \omega^2(t) \nabla^2 \omega F(t,\omega) dt - \sum_{t \in (0,T]} \left( F(t,\omega_t) - F(t,\omega_{t^-}) - \nabla \omega F(t,\omega_{t^-}) \cdot \Delta \omega(t) \right). \quad (4.31)$$

**Proof.** We follow the same steps as in the proof of Proposition 4.2, with the appropriate modifications. The universal pricing equation holds on the support of $S$, that is, for all $\omega \in \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})$,

$$\mathcal{D}F(t,\omega) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla^2 \omega F(t,\omega) \sigma^2(t,\omega) \omega^2(t) = 0 \text{ for Lebesgue-a.e. } t \in [0, T).$$

By Proposition 3.8 and using the pathwise change of variable formula for functionals of càdlàg paths (Theorem 1.9), the value of the hedger’s portfolio
at maturity in the scenario $\omega$ is given by

$$V(T, \omega) = F(0, \omega_0) + \int_0^T \nabla \omega F(t, \omega) d\Pi(t)$$

$$= H - \int_0^T DF(t, \omega) dt - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega) d[\omega]^c(t)$$

$$- \sum_{t \in (0, T]} (F(t, \omega_t) - F(t, \omega_{t-}) - \nabla \omega F(t, \omega_{t-}) \cdot \Delta \omega(t)). \quad (4.32)$$

Then, using the equations (4.32), (4.33) and (4.27), we get an explicit expression for the hedging error in the scenario $\omega$:

$$V(T, \omega) - H = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left( \sigma(u, \omega)^2 - \sigma^{mkt}(u, \omega)^2 \right) \omega^2(u) \nabla^2 \omega F(u, \omega) du$$

$$- \sum_{t \in (0, T]} (F(t, \omega_t) - F(t, \omega_{t-}) - \nabla \omega F(t, \omega_{t-}) \Delta \omega(t)). \quad (4.33)$$

\[ \square \]

**Remark 4.14.** Using a Taylor expansion of $e \mapsto F(t, \omega_{t-} + e \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]})$, we can rewrite the hedging error as

$$V(T, \omega) - H = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left( \sigma(u, \omega)^2 - \sigma^{mkt}(u, \omega)^2 \right) \omega^2(u) \nabla^2 \omega F(u, \omega) du$$

$$- \frac{1}{2} \sum_{t \in (0, T]} \nabla^2 \omega F(t, \omega_{t-} + \xi \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]}) \Delta \omega(t)^2,$$

for an appropriate $\xi \in B(0, |\Delta \omega(t)|)$. This shows that the exposure to jump risk is quantified by the Gamma of the option computed in a ‘jump scenario’, i.e. along a vertical perturbation of the original path.

### 4.4 Regularity of pricing functionals

Proposition 4.2 requires some regularity on the pricing functional $F$, which is in general defined as a conditional expectation, therefore it is not obvious to verify such regularities for $F$ on the space of stopped paths. In Proposition 4.4, we give sufficient conditions on the payoff functional which lead to a *vertically smooth* pricing functional.
Definition 4.15. A functional \( h : D([0,T],\mathbb{R}) \mapsto \mathbb{R} \) is said to be vertically smooth on \( U \subset D([0,T],\mathbb{R}) \) if \( \forall (t,w) \in [0,T] \times U \) the map
\[
g^h(\cdot; t,\omega) : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R},
\]
e \mapsto h(\omega + e1_{[t,T]})
is twice continuously differentiable at 0, with first and second derivatives bounded in a neighborhood of 0 uniformly in \( (t,w) \in [0,T] \times U \), i.e. there exists \( K > 0 \) such that, for all \( (t,\omega) \in [0,T] \times U \),
\[
|\partial_e g^h(e; t,\omega)| + |\partial_{ee} g^h(e; t,\omega)| \leq K,
\]
and there exist \( c, \beta > 0 \) such that, for all \( t, t' \in [0,T] \) and \( \omega, \omega' \in U \),
\[
|\partial_t g^h(0; t,\omega) - \partial_t g^h(0; t',\omega')| + |\partial_{tt} g^h(0; t,\omega) - \partial_{tt} g^h(0; t',\omega')| \leq c(\|\omega - \omega'\|_\infty + |t - t'|^\beta).
\]
(4.34)

We define, for all \( t \in [0,T] \), the concatenation operator \( \oplus \) as
\[
\oplus : D([0,T],\mathbb{R}) \times D([0,T],\mathbb{R}) \to D([0,T],\mathbb{R}),
\]
\[
(\omega, \omega') \mapsto \omega \oplus \omega' = \omega 1_{[0,t]} + \omega' 1_{[t,T]}.
\]
This will appear in the proof of Propositions 4.4 and 4.5.

The following result shows how to construct a (vertically) smooth version of the conditional expectation that gives the price of a path-dependent contingent claim.

Proposition 4.4. Let \( H : (D([0,T],\mathbb{R}), \|\cdot\|_\infty) \mapsto \mathbb{R} \) a locally-Lipschitz payoff functional such that \( \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P}[|H(S_T)|] < \infty \) and define \( h : (D([0,T],\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R} \) by \( h(\omega_T) = H(\exp \omega_T) \), where \( \exp \omega_T(t) := e^{\omega(t)} \) for all \( t \in [0,T] \). If \( h \) is vertically smooth on \( C([0,T],\mathbb{R}+) \) in the sense of Definition 4.15.

\[
\exists F \in C^{0,2}_b(W_T) \cap C^{0,0}(W_T), \quad F(t,S_t) = \mathbb{E}^\mathbb{P}[H(S_T)|\mathcal{F}_t] \quad dt \times d\mathbb{P}-a.s. \quad (4.35)
\]

Proof. The first step is to construct analytically a regular non-anticipative functional representation \( F : \Lambda_T \mapsto \mathbb{R} \) of the claim price, then the properties
of regularity and vertical smoothness of $F$ will follow from the conditions of the payoff $H$.

By Theorem 1.3.4 in [100] on the existence of regular conditional distributions, for any $t \in [0, T]$ there exists a regular conditional distribution \( \{ P^{(t, \omega)}, \omega \in \Omega \} \) of \( \mathbb{P} \) given the (countably generated) sub-\( \sigma \)-algebra \( \mathcal{F}_t \subset \mathcal{F} \), i.e. a family of probability measures \( \mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)} \) on \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}) \) such that

1. \( \forall B \in \mathcal{F}, \) the map \( \Omega \ni \omega \mapsto \mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}(B) \in [0, 1] \) is \( \mathcal{F}_t \)-measurable;
2. \( \forall A \in \mathcal{F}_t, \forall B \in \mathcal{F}, \) \( \mathbb{P}(A \cap B) = \int_A \mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}(B) \mathbb{P}(d\omega) \);
3. \( \forall A \in \mathcal{F}_t, \forall \omega \in \Omega, \) \( \mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}(A) = 1_A(\omega) \).

Moreover, for any random variable \( Z \in L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P}) \), it holds

\[
\mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}}[|Z|] < \infty \text{ and } \mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}}[Z|\mathcal{F}_t](\omega) = \mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}}[Z] \text{ for } \mathbb{P}\text{-almost all } \omega \in \Omega.
\]

By taking \( Z = H(S_T) \), since \( \mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)} \) is concentrated on the subspace \( \Omega^{(t, \omega)} := \{ \omega' \in \Omega : \omega'_t = \omega_t \} \), we can rewrite \( \mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}}[H(S_T)] = \mathbb{E}^{\mathbb{P}^{(t, \omega)}}[H(\omega \oplus S_T)] \).

For any \( t \in [0, T], x > 0, \) we denote \( \mathbb{P}^{(t, x)} \) the law of the stochastic process \( x1_{[0,t]} + S^{(t, x)}1_{[t,T]} \) on \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P}) \), where \( \{ S^{(t, x)}(u) \}_{u \in [t, T]} \) is defined by

\[
S^{(t, x)}(u) = x + \int_t^u \sigma(r) S^{(t, x)}(r) dW(r), \quad u \in [t, T]. \tag{4.36}
\]

Note that \( S \) has the same law under \( \mathbb{P}^{(t, x + \varepsilon)} \) that \( S \left( 1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{x} \right) \) has under \( \mathbb{P}^{(t, x)} \).

Indeed:

\[
S^{(t, x + \varepsilon)} = \left( x + \varepsilon + \int_t^u \sigma(u) S^{(t, x + \varepsilon)}(u) dW(u) \right) 1_{[t,T]}
= \left( x + \left( 1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{x} \right) \int_t^u \sigma(u) dW(s) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^u \sigma^2(u) du \right) 1_{[t,T]}
= S^{(t, x)} \left( 1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{x} \right),
\]

hence we have the following identities in law

\[
\text{Law}(S, \mathbb{P}^{(t, x + \varepsilon)}) = \text{Law} \left( (x + \varepsilon)1_{[0,t]} + S^{(t, x + \varepsilon)}1_{[t,T]}, \mathbb{P} \right)
= \text{Law} \left( x1_{[0,t]} + S^{(t, x)}1_{[t,T]} \left( 1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{x} \right), \mathbb{P} \right)
= \text{Law} \left( S \left( 1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{x} \right), \mathbb{P}^{(t, x)} \right).
\]
4.4. Regularity of pricing functionals

Then, consider the non-anticipative functional \( F : \Lambda_T \to \mathbb{R} \) defined by, for all \((t, \omega) \in \Lambda_T,\)

\[
F(t, \omega) = \mathbb{E}^{P(t, \omega)} \left[ H \left( \omega \otimes S_T \right) \right] = \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ H \left( \omega \otimes (t)e^{\int_t^T \sigma(s) dW(s) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^T \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t,T]} \right) \right].
\]

If computed respectively on a continuous stopped path \((t, \omega) \in \mathcal{W}_T\) and on its vertical perturbation in \(t\) of size \(\varepsilon\), it gives

\[
F(t, \omega) = \mathbb{E}^{P(t, \omega)} \left[ H \left( \omega \otimes S_T \right) \right] = \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ H(S_T) | \mathcal{F}_t \right] (\omega) \quad \text{P-a.s.,}
\]

\[
F(t, \omega') = \mathbb{E}^{P(t, \omega'+\varepsilon)} \left[ H \left( \omega \otimes S_T \right) \right] = \mathbb{E}^{P(t, \omega)} \left[ H \left( \omega \otimes S_T \left( 1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{\omega(t)} \right) \right) \right].
\]

Since \(H\) is locally Lipschitz continuous, given \((t, \omega) \in [0, T] \times C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+),\) there exist \(\eta = \eta(\omega) > 0\) and \(K_\omega \geq 0\) such that

\[
\| \omega - \omega' \|_\infty \leq \eta(\omega) \quad \Rightarrow \quad |H(\omega) - H(\omega')| \leq K_\omega \| \omega - \omega' \|_\infty.
\]

Now, we prove the joint-continuity, by showing the computation for the right side - the other being analogous because of symmetric properties; this also proves continuity at fixed times. So, given \((t, \omega) \in \mathcal{W}_T,\) for \(t' \in [t, T],\)

\[
| F(t, \omega) - F(t', \omega') | =
\]

\[
= \mathbb{E}^{P(t, \omega)} \left[ H \left( \omega \otimes S_T \right) \right] - \mathbb{E}^{P(t', \omega')} \left[ H \left( \omega' \otimes S_T \right) \right]
\]

\[
= \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ H \left( \omega \mathbb{I}_{[0,t]} + \omega(t)e^{\int_t^T \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^T \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t,T]} \right) - H \left( \omega' \mathbb{I}_{[0,t']} + \omega'(t')e^{\int_t^{t'} \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t',T]} \right) \right]
\]

\[
\leq K_\omega \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ \| (\omega - \omega') \mathbb{I}_{[0,t]} \|_\infty + \| (\omega(t)e^{\int_t^T \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^T \sigma^2(u) du} - \omega'(t')e^{\int_t^{t'} \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t',T]} \|_\infty \right]
\]

\[
\leq K_\omega \left( |\omega(t)| + |\omega'(t')| \right) \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ \| e^{\int_t^T \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^T \sigma^2(u) du} - 1 \mathbb{I}_{[t,T]} \|_\infty \| e^{\int_t^{t'} \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t',T]} \|_\infty \right] + \eta
\]

\[
+ \| \omega(t) \| \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ \| e^{\int_t^T \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^T \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t,T]} \|_\infty \| e^{\int_t^{t'} \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u) du} - 1 \mathbb{I}_{[t',T]} \|_\infty \right] + \eta \mathbb{E}^{P} \left[ \| e^{\int_t^{t'} \sigma(s) dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u) du} \mathbb{I}_{[t',T]} \|_\infty \right].
\]
The first and third expectations in (4.38) go to 0 as $t'$ tends to $t$, indeed:

\[
0 \leq \mathbb{E}^p \left[ e^{f^{t'}_{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} f^{t'}_{t'} \sigma^2(u)du} - 1 \right] 
\leq \mathbb{E}^p \left[ \sup_{s \in [t', T]} \left| e^{f_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} f_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u)du} - 1 \right| \right] 
\leq \mathbb{E}^p \left[ \sup_{s \in [t', T]} \left| e^{f_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} f_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u)du} - 1 \right|^2 \right]^\frac{1}{2}, \quad \text{by Hölder’s inequality}
\]
\[
\leq 2 \mathbb{E}^p \left[ \left( M(t') - 1 \right)^2 \right]^\frac{1}{2}
= 2 \sqrt{\mathbb{E}^p \left[ M(t') \right]},
\]
where $M$ denotes the exponential martingale
\[
M(s) = e^{f_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} f_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u)du}, \quad s \in [t, T].
\]

So, the expectation goes to 0 as $t'$ tends to $t$, by Assumption 4.2. On the other hand, the second and fourth expectations in (4.38) are bounded above, again by Hölder’s and Doob’s martingale inequalities:

\[
\mathbb{E}^p \left[ \sup_{s \in [t', T]} \left| e^{f_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} f_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u)du} \right| \right] \leq \mathbb{E}^p \left[ \sup_{s \in [t', T]} e^{2 f_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - f_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u)du} \right]^\frac{1}{2}
\leq 2 \mathbb{E}^p \left( \frac{M(T)}{M(t')} \right)^2 \frac{1}{2}
= 2 \mathbb{E}^p \left[ \frac{M(T)}{M(t')} - 1 \right]^\frac{1}{2},
\]
which is finite by Assumption 4.2.

The vertical incremental ratio of $F$ is given by

$$
\frac{F(t, \omega + \epsilon) - F(t, \omega)}{\epsilon} = \frac{1}{\epsilon} \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ H \left( \omega \bigoplus_t S_T \left( 1 + \frac{\epsilon}{\omega(t)} \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]} \right) \right) - H \left( \omega \bigoplus_t S_T \right) \right]
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{\epsilon} \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ h \left( \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) 
- h \left( \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right]
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{\epsilon} \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ h \left( \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) + \log \left( 1 + \frac{\epsilon}{\omega(t)} \right) \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]} \right) 
- h \left( \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right].
$$

Then, the vertical smoothness of $h$ allows to use a dominated convergence argument to go to the limit for $\epsilon$ going to 0 inside the expectation. So we get:

$$
\nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)} \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ \partial_\epsilon g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right],
$$

$$
\nabla^2_\omega F(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)^2} \left( \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \epsilon^2} g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right] 
- \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ \partial_\epsilon g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right] \right)
$$

The joint continuity of the first and second-order vertical derivative of $F$ are proved similarly, by means of the H"older condition (4.34). Indeed, if $d_\infty((t, \omega), (t, \omega')) < \eta$, then:

$$
\nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)} \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ \partial_\epsilon g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right],
$$

$$
\nabla^2_\omega F(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)^2} \left( \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \epsilon^2} g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right] 
- \mathbb{E}^{p(t,\omega)} \left[ \partial_\epsilon g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \bigoplus_t S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right] \right)
$$
\[ |\nabla_0 F(t, \omega) - \nabla_0 F(t', \omega')| = \]
\[ = \frac{1}{\omega(t)} \mathbb{E}^P(t, \omega) \left[ \partial_0 g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega + S_T}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right. \]
\[ - \frac{1}{\omega'(t')} \mathbb{E}^P(t', \omega') \left[ \partial_0 g^h \left( 0; t', \log \left( \frac{\omega + S_T}{\omega'(0)} \right) \right) \right] \]
\[ = \frac{1}{\omega(t)\omega'(t')} \mathbb{E}^P \left[ \omega'(t') \partial_0 g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \mathbb{1}_{[0,t]} + \omega(t)e^{\int_t^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^t \sigma^2(u)du} \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]}}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right. \]
\[ - \omega(t)\partial_0 g^h \left( 0; t', \log \left( \frac{\omega \mathbb{1}_{[0,t']} + \omega(t)e^{\int_{t'}^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_{t'}^t \sigma^2(u)du} \mathbb{1}_{[t',T]}}{\omega'(0)} \right) \right) \]
\[ \leq \frac{1}{\omega(t)(\omega(t) - \eta)} \left\{ \mathbb{E}^P \left[ \eta \left\| \partial_0 g^h \left( 0; t, \log \left( \frac{\omega \mathbb{1}_{[0,t]} + \omega(t)e^{\int_t^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^t \sigma^2(u)du} \mathbb{1}_{[t,T]}}{\omega(0)} \right) \right) \right\|_\infty \right. \right. \]
\[ + K|\omega(t)| \left( |t' - t|^\beta + \left\| \log \left( \frac{\omega}{\omega(0)} \right) - \log \left( \frac{\omega'}{\omega'(0)} \right) \right\|_\infty \right) \]
\[ + \mathbb{E}^P \left[ \left\| \log \left( \frac{\omega}{\omega(0)} \right) e^{\int_0^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \sigma^2(u)du} - \log \left( \frac{\omega'}{\omega'(0)} \right) e^{\int_{t'}^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_{t'}^t \sigma^2(u)du} \right\|_\infty \right. \]
\[ \left. + \left\| \log \left( \frac{\omega}{\omega(0)} \right) e^{\int_0^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \sigma^2(u)du} - \log \left( \frac{\omega'(t)}{\omega'(0)} \right) e^{\int_{t'}^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_{t'}^t \sigma^2(u)du} \right\|_\infty \right. \]
\[ \leq \frac{1}{\omega(t)(\omega(t) - \eta)} \left\{ \eta C_1 + K|\omega(t)| \left( |t' - t|^\beta + 2\eta' \right) \right. \]
\[ + \mathbb{E}^P \left\| \left( \int_t^t \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^t \sigma^2(u)du \right) \mathbb{1}_{[t,t']} \right\|_\infty \right. \]
\[ + \mathbb{E}^P \left\| \left( \int_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t'} \sigma^2(u)du \right) \right\| \}
\[ \leq K' \left( \eta + |t' - t|^\beta + 2\eta' + 3\mathbb{E}^P \left[ \left( \int_t^{t'} \sigma(u)dW(u) \right)^2 \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} + \hat{\sigma}^2(t' - t) \right) \]

The two constants \( C_1 \) and \( \eta' \) in (4.39) come respectively from the uniform bound on \( \partial_0 g^h \) and from the bound of \( \left\| \log \frac{\omega}{\omega(0)} - \log \frac{\omega'}{\omega'(0)} \right\|_\infty \), while to obtain
we used the Hölder’s and Doob’s martingale inequalities.

### 4.5 Vertical convexity as a condition for robustness

The path-dependent analogue of the convexity property that plays a role in the analysis of hedging strategies turns out to be the following.

**Definition 4.16.** A non-anticipative functional $G : \Lambda_T \to \mathbb{R}$ is called vertically convex on $U \subset \Lambda_T$ if, for all $(t, \omega) \in U$, there exists a neighborhood $V \subset \mathbb{R}$ of 0 such that the map

$$V \to \mathbb{R}$$

$$e \mapsto G(t, \omega + e\mathbb{1}_{[t,T]})$$

is convex.

It is readily observed that if $F \in C^{0,2}$ is vertically convex on $U$, then $\nabla^2\omega F(t, \omega) \geq 0$ for all $(t, \omega) \in U$.

We now provide a sufficient condition on the payoff functional which ensures that the vertically smooth value functional in (4.35) is vertically convex.

**Proposition 4.5** (Vertical convexity of pricing functionals). Assume that, for all $(t, \omega) \in \mathbb{T} \times \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})$, there exists an interval $\mathcal{I} \subset \mathbb{R}$, $0 \in \mathcal{I}$, such that the map

$$\nu^H(\cdot; t, \omega) : \mathcal{I} \to \mathbb{R},$$

$$e \mapsto \nu^H(e; t, \omega) = H(\omega(1 + e\mathbb{1}_{[t,T]}))$$

is convex. If the value functional $F$ defined in (4.37) is of class $C^{0,2}(W_T)$, then it is vertically convex on $\mathbb{T} \times \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})$. In particular:

$$\forall (t, \omega) \in \mathbb{T} \times \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P}), \quad \nabla^2\omega F(t, \omega) \geq 0.$$
Proof. We only need to show that convexity of the map in (4.41) is inherited by the map $e \mapsto F(t, \omega_t^e)$, which is also twice differentiable in 0 by assumption, hence (4.42) follows. A simple way of proving convexity of a continuous function is through the property of Wright-convexity, introduced by Wright [110] in 1954. Precisely, we want to prove that for every $(t, \omega) \in T \times \text{supp} (S,P)$, for all $\varepsilon, e > 0$ such that $\frac{e}{\omega(t)}$, $\frac{e + \varepsilon}{\omega(t)} \in I$, the map

$$I' \to \mathbb{R}, \quad e \mapsto F(t, \omega_t^{e+\varepsilon}) - F(t, \omega_t^e)$$

is increasing:

$$F(t, \omega_t^{e+\varepsilon}) - F(t, \omega_t^e) = \mathbb{E}^{p(\cdot, \omega)} \left[ H \left( \left( \frac{\omega}{t} \right) \right) \left( 1 + e + \frac{\varepsilon}{\omega(t)} I_{[t,T]} \right) \right] - H \left( \left( \frac{\omega}{t} \right) \right) \left( 1 + e + \frac{\varepsilon}{\omega(t)} I_{[t,T]} \right)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}^{p(\cdot, \omega)} \left[ v^H \left( \frac{e + \varepsilon}{\omega(t)} ; t, \omega \right) - v^H \left( \frac{e}{\omega(t)} ; t, \omega \right) \right].$$

Since $v^H(\cdot ; t, \omega)$ is continuous and convex, hence Wright-convex, on $I$, the random variable inside the expectation is pathwise increasing in $e$. Hence also $I' \ni e \mapsto F(t, \omega_t^e)$ is Wright-convex, where $I' := \omega(t) I \subset \mathbb{R}$, $0 \in I'$. Therefore, $F$ is vertically convex. Moreover, since $F \in C^0_2(\mathcal{W}_T)$, Definition 4.16 implies that

$$\forall (t, \omega) \in T \times \text{supp} (S\mathbb{P}), \quad \nabla^2_{\omega} F(t, \omega) \geq 0.$$  

\[ \square \]

Remark 4.17. If there exists an interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$, $B \left( 0, \frac{\Delta \omega(t)}{\omega(t)} \right) \subset I$, such that the map $v^H(\cdot ; t, \omega)$ defined in (4.41) is convex, then

$$\nabla^2_{\omega} F(t, \omega_{t-} + \xi I_{[t,T]}) \geq 0 \quad \forall \xi \in B(0, |\Delta \omega(t)|).$$  

(4.43)

4.6 A model with path-dependent volatility: Hobson-Rogers

In the model proposed by Hobson and Rogers [58], under the market probability $\widehat{\mathbb{P}}$, the discounted log-price process $Z$, $Z(t) = \log S(t)$ for all
4.6. A model with path-dependent volatility: Hobson-Rogers

t \in [0, T], is assumed to solve the stochastic differential equation

\[ \frac{dZ(t)}{Z(t)} = \sigma(t, Z_t)\tilde{W}(t) + \mu(t, Z_t)dt, \]

where \( \tilde{W} \) is a \( \tilde{P} \)-Brownian motion and \( \sigma, \mu \) are non-anticipative functionals of the process itself, which can be rewritten as Lipschitz-continuous functions of the current time, price and offset functionals of order up to \( n \):

\[ \sigma(t, \omega) = \sigma^n(t, \omega(t), o^{(1)}(t, \omega), \ldots, o^{(n)}(t, \omega)), \]
\[ \mu(t, \omega) = \mu^n(t, \omega(t), o^{(1)}(t, \omega), \ldots, o^{(n)}(t, \omega)), \]
\[ o^{(m)}(t, \omega) = \int_0^\infty \lambda e^{-\lambda u}(\omega(t) - \omega(t-u))^m du, \quad m = 1, \ldots, n. \]

Note that, in the original formulation in \[58\], the authors take into account the interest rate and denote by \( Z(t) = \log(S(t)e^{-rt}) \) the discounted log-price. We use the same notation for the forward log-prices instead.

Even if the coefficients of the SDE are path-dependent functionals, \[58\] proved that the \( n+1 \)-dimensional process \( (Z, O^{(1)}, \ldots, O^{(n)}) \) composed of the price process and the offset processes up to order \( n \), \( O^{(m)}(t) := o^{(m)}(t, Z_t) \), is a Markov process. In the special case \( n = 1 \) and \( \sigma^n(t, x, o) = \sigma^n(o) \), \( \mu^n(t, x, o) = \mu^n(o) \), denoted \( O := O^{(1)} \), they proved the existence of an equivalent martingale measure \( \mathbb{P} \) defined by

\[ \frac{d\mathbb{P}}{d\mathbb{P}^r} = \exp \left\{ - \int_0^t \theta(O(u))dW(u) - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \theta(O(u))^2 du \right\}, \]

where \( \theta(o) = \frac{1}{2} \sigma^n(o) + \frac{\mu^n(o)}{\sigma^n(o)} \). Then, the offset process solves

\[ dO(t) = \sigma^n(O(t))d\tilde{W}(t) + (\mu^n(O(t)) - \lambda O(t))dt \]
\[ = \sigma^n(O(t))dW(t) - \frac{1}{2}(\sigma^n(O(t))^2 + \lambda O(t))dt, \]

where \( W \) is the \( \mathbb{P} \)-Brownian motion defined by \( W(t) = \tilde{W}(t) + \int_0^t \theta(O(u))du \).

So, the (forward) price process solves

\[ dS(t) = S(t)\sigma^n(O(t))dW(t), \quad (4.44) \]

where \( W \) is a standard Brownian motion on \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{F}, \mathbb{P}) \) and \( \sigma^n : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R} \) is a Lipschitz-continuous function, satisfying some integrability conditions such that the correspondent pricing PDEs admit a classical solution.
The price of a European contingent claim with payoff $H(S(T))$, satisfying appropriate integrability and growth conditions, is given by, for all $(t, \omega) \in \mathcal{W}_T$,

$$F(t, \omega) = f(t, \omega(t), o(t, \omega)), \quad o(t, \omega) = \int_0^\infty \lambda e^{-\lambda u}(\omega(t) - \omega(t - u))du,$$

where $f$ is the solution $f \in C^{1,2,2}([0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}) \cap C([0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R})$ of the partial differential equation on $[0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}$

$$\frac{\sigma^2(o)^2}{2}(x^2\partial_{xx}f + 2x\partial_{xof}f + \partial_{oo}f) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2(o)^2 + \lambda o\right)\partial_o f + \partial_t f = 0,$$

where $\sigma^2(o) = \varnothing f(t, x, o)$, with final datum $f(T, x, o) = H(x)$. Using a change of variable, the pricing problem simplifies to solving the following degenerate PDE on $[0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}$

$$\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2(x_1 - x_2)^2(\partial_{x_1x_1}u - \partial_{x_1}u) + \lambda(x_1 - x_2)\partial_{x_2}u - \partial_t u = 0, \quad (4.45)$$

where $u \equiv u(T-t, x_1, x_2) = f(t, e^{x_1}, x_1-x_2)$, with initial condition $u(0, x_1, x_2) = H(e^{x_1})$. Note that the pricing PDE (4.45) reduces to the universal pricing equation [127], where, for all $(t, \omega) \in \mathcal{W}_T$,

$$F(t, \omega) = u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega)),$$

and

$$\mathcal{D}F(t, \omega) = -\partial_t u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega)) + \lambda \partial_{x_2}u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega)),$$

$$\nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) = \partial_{x_1}u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega)),$$

$$\nabla^2_\omega F(t, \omega) = \frac{1}{\omega(t)^2}(\partial_{x_1x_1}u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega)) - \partial_{x_1}u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega)).$$

### 4.7 Examples

We now show how the above results apply to specific examples of hedging strategies for path-dependent derivatives.
4.7. Examples

4.7.1 Discretely-monitored path-dependent derivatives

The simplest class of path-dependent derivatives are those which are discretely-monitored. The robustness of delta-hedging strategies for discretely-monitored path-dependent derivatives was studied in [98] as shown in Section 4.1.2. In the case of a Black-Scholes pricing model with time-dependent volatility, we show such results may be derived, without probabilistic assumptions on the true price dynamics, as a special case of the results presented above, and we obtain explicit expressions for the first and second order sensitivities of the pricing functional (see also Cont and Yi [9]).

The following lemma describes the regularity of pricing functionals for discretely-monitored options in a Black-Scholes model with time-dependent volatility \( \sigma : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R}_+ \) such that \( \int_0^T \sigma^2(t)dt < \infty \). The regularity assumption on the payoff functional is weaker than the ones required for Proposition 4.13 thanks to the finite dimension of the problem.

**Lemma 4.18** (Discretely-monitored path-dependent derivatives). Let \( H : D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+) \) and assume that there exist a partition \( 0 = t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_n \leq T \) and a function \( h \in C^2_b(\mathbb{R}^n; \mathbb{R}_+) \) such that

\[
\forall \omega \in D([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+), \quad H(\omega_T) = h(\omega(t_1), \omega(t_2), \ldots, \omega(t_n)).
\]

Then, the non-anticipative functional \( F \) defined in (4.37) is locally regular, that is \( F \in C^{1,2}_{loc}(\mathcal{W}_T) \), with horizontal and vertical derivatives given in a closed form.

**Proof.** For any \( \omega \in \Omega \) and \( t \in [0, T] \), let us denote \( \tilde{k} \equiv \tilde{k}(n, t) := \max\{i \in \)
{1, \ldots, n} : t_i \leq t$, then for $s$ small enough $t + s \in [t_k, t_{k+1})$ and we have

\[
F(t + s, \omega_t) - F(t, \omega_t) = \mathbb{E}^Q \left[ H \left( \omega(t_1), \ldots, \omega(t_{k}), \omega(t)e^{f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma(u)du} - \frac{1}{2} f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du \right) \right]
\]

\[
= \int \cdots \int H(\omega(t_1), \ldots, \omega(t_{k}), \omega(t)e^{y_1}, \ldots, \omega(t)e^{y_{n-k}}) \prod_{i=1}^{n-k} e^{-\left(\frac{y_i + \frac{1}{2} f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}{\sqrt{2\pi} \int f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}} \, dy_i
\]

\[
- \int \cdots \int H(\omega(t_1), \ldots, \omega(t_{k}), \omega(t)e^{y_1}, \ldots, \omega(t)e^{y_{n-k}}) \prod_{i=1}^{n-k} e^{-\left(\frac{y_i + \frac{1}{2} f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}{\sqrt{2\pi} \int f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}} \, dy_i.
\]

By denoting

\[
v_i(s) := \frac{e^{-\left(\frac{y_i + \frac{1}{2} f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}{\sqrt{2\pi} \int f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}}}{\sqrt{2\pi} \int f_{t_{k+1}}^{t_{k+1}} \sigma^2(u)du}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n - k,
\]

dividing by $s$ and taking the limit for $s$ going to $0$, we obtain

\[
\mathcal{D}F(t, \omega) = \lim_{s \to 0} \frac{F(t + s, \omega_t) - F(t, \omega_t)}{s}
\]

\[
= \sum_{j=1}^{n-k} \int \cdots \int H(\omega(t_1), \ldots, \omega(t_{k}), \omega(t)e^{y_1}, \ldots, \omega(t)e^{y_{n-k}}) \prod_{i=1, i \neq j}^{n-k} v'_i(0)v_j(0)dy_i dy_j,
\]

(4.46)
where, for \( i = 1, \ldots, n - \bar{k} \),
\[
v'_i(0) = \frac{u_i(0)\sigma^2(t)}{2\left(f^k_{i+k} \sigma^2(u)du\right)} \left( y_i + \frac{1}{2} \int_t^{t_{k+i}} \sigma^2(u)du \right) \int_t^{t_{k+i}} \sigma^2(u)du \left( \int_t^{t_{k+i}} \sigma^2(u)du \right)^2 + \int_t^{t_{k+i}} \sigma^2(u)du \right).
\]

Moreover, the first and second vertical derivatives are explicitly computed as:
\[
\nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) = \sum_{j=1}^{n-k} \int \cdots \int \partial_{k+j} H(\omega(t_1), \ldots, \omega(t_k), \omega(t)e^{y_1}, \ldots, \omega(t)e^{y_{n-k}}) e^{y_j} \prod_{i=1}^{n-k} v_i(0)dy_i,
\]
(4.47)
\[
\nabla^2_\omega F(t, \omega) = \sum_{i,j=1}^{n-k} \int \cdots \int \partial_{k+i,k+j} H(\omega(t_1), \ldots, \omega(t_k), \omega(t)e^{y_1}, \ldots, \omega(t)e^{y_{n-k}}) e^{y_j+y_i} \prod_{l=1}^{n-k} v_i(0)dy_i,
\]
(4.48)
where \( k \equiv k(n, t) := \max\{i \in \{1, \ldots, n\} : t_i < t\} \).

### 4.7.2 Robust hedging for Asian options

Asian options, which are options on the average price computed across a certain fixing period, are commonly traded in currency and commodities markets. The payoff of Asian options depends on an average of prices during the lifetime of the option, which can be of two types: an arithmetic average
\[
M^A(T) = \int_0^T S(u)\mu(du),
\]
or a geometric average
\[
M^G(T) = \int_0^T \log S(u)\mu(du).
\]
We consider Asian call options with date of maturity \( T \), whose payoff is given by a continuous functional on \((D([0, T], \mathbb{R}), \|\cdot\|_\infty)\):
\[
H^A(S_T) = (M^A(T) - K)^+ =: \Psi^A(S(T), M^A(T)) \quad \text{arithmetic Asian call},
\]
\[
H^G(S_T) = (e^{M^G(T)} - K)^+ =: \Psi^G(S(T), M^G(T)) \quad \text{geometric Asian call}.
\]
Various weighting schemes may be considered:
Chapter 4. PATHWISE ANALYSIS OF DYNAMIC HEDGING

- if $\mu(du) = \delta_{\{T\}}(du)$, we reduce to an European option, with strike price $K$;
- if $\mu(du) = \frac{1}{T} 1_{[0,T]}(u)du$, we have a fixed strike Asian option, with strike price $K$;
- in the arithmetic case, if $\mu(du) = \delta_{\{T\}}(du) - \frac{1}{T} 1_{[0,T]}(u)du$ and $K = 0$, we have a floating strike Asian option; the geometric floating strike Asian call has instead payoff $(S(T) - e^{MG(T)})^+$ with $\mu(du) = \frac{1}{T} 1_{[0,T]}(u)du$.

Here, we consider the hedging strategies for fixed strike Asian options, first in a Black-Scholes pricing model, where the volatility is a deterministic function of time, then in a model with path-dependent volatility, the Hobson-Rogers model introduced in Section 4.6. First, we show that these models admit a smooth pricing functional. Then, we show that the assumptions of Proposition 4.5 are satisfied, which leads to robustness of the hedging strategy.

Black-Scholes delta-hedging for Asian options

In the Black-Scholes model, the value functional of such options can be computed in terms of a standard function of three variables (see e.g. [86, Section 7.6]). In the arithmetic case: for all $(t, \omega) \in W_T$,

$$F(t, \omega) = f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega)), \quad a(t, \omega) = \int_0^t \omega(s)ds,$$

(4.49)

where $f \in C^{1,2,2}([0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}_+) \cap C([0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}_+)$ is the solution of the following Cauchy problem with final datum:

$$\begin{cases}
\frac{\sigma^2(t) a^2}{2} \partial_{xx} f(t, x, a) + x \partial_a f(t, x, a) + \partial_t f(t, x, a) = 0, & t \in [0,T), a, x \in \mathbb{R}_+ \\
f(T, x, a) = \Psi^A(x, \frac{a}{T}).
\end{cases}$$

(4.50)

Different parametrizations were suggested in order to facilitate the computation of the solution, which is however not in a closed form. For example, [37] shows a different characterization which improves the numerical discretization of the problem, while [92] reduces the pricing issue to the solution of a
parabolic PDE in two variable, thus decreasing the dimension of the problem, as done in [61] for the case of a floating-strike Asian option.

In the geometric case: for all $(t, \omega) \in \mathcal{W}_T$,

$$F(t, \omega) = f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega)), \quad g(t, \omega) = \int_0^t \log \omega(s) ds,$$

where $f \in C^{1,2,2}([0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}) \cap C([0,T] \times \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R})$ is the solution of the following Cauchy problem with final datum: for $t \in [0,T)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}_+$, $g \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\begin{cases}
\frac{\sigma(t)x^2}{2} \partial_{xx} f(t, x, g) + \log x \partial_g f(t, x, g) + \partial_t f(t, x, g) = 0, \\
f(T, x, g) = \Psi^G(x, \frac{g}{\sigma(T)})\end{cases}$$

(4.52)

As in the arithmetic case, the dimension of the problem (4.52) can be reduced to two by a change of variable. Moreover, in this case, it is possible to obtain a Kolmogorov equation associated to a degenerate parabolic operator that has a Gaussian fundamental solution.

We remark that the pricing PDEs (4.50), (4.52) are both equivalent to the functional partial differential equation (4.27) for $F$ defined respectively by (4.49) and (4.51). Indeed, computing the horizontal and vertical derivatives of $F$ yields

For the arithmetic case, and

$$\begin{align*}
\mathcal{D}F(t, \omega) &= \partial_t f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega)) + \omega(t) \partial_a f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega)), \\
\nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) &= \partial_x f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega)), \\
\nabla_\omega^2 F(t, \omega) &= \partial_{xx} f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega))
\end{align*}$$

for the arithmetic case, and

$$\begin{align*}
\mathcal{D}F(t, \omega) &= \partial_t f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega)) + \log \omega(t) \partial_g f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega)), \\
\nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) &= \partial_x f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega)), \\
\nabla_\omega^2 F(t, \omega) &= \partial_{xx} f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega))
\end{align*}$$

for the geometric case.

Thus, the standard pricing problems for the arithmetic and geometric Asian call options turn out to be particular cases of Proposition 3.9, with $A = \sigma^2 \omega^2$. In particular, the delta-hedging strategy is given by

$$\phi(t, \omega) = \nabla_\omega F(t, \omega) = \partial_x f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega)) \quad \text{(arithmetic)}, \quad \text{or}$$

$$= \partial_x f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega)) \quad \text{(geometric)}.$$

The following claim is an application of Proposition 4.5.
Corollary 4.1. If the Black-Scholes volatility term structure over-estimates the realized market volatility, i.e.

\[ \sigma(t) \geq \sigma^{\text{mkt}}(t, \omega) \quad \forall \omega \in A \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P}) \]

then the Black-Scholes delta hedges for the Asian options with payoff functionals

\[
H^A(S_T) = (\frac{1}{T} \int_0^T S(t)dt - K)^+ \quad \text{arithmetic Asian call}, \\
H^G(S_T) = (e^{\frac{1}{T} \int_0^T \log S(t)dt} - K)^+ \quad \text{geometric Asian call},
\]

are robust on \( A \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P}) \). Moreover, the hedging error at maturity is given by

\[
\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\sigma(t)^2 - \sigma^{\text{mkt}}(t, \omega)^2) \omega^2(t) \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} f dt,
\]

where \( f \) stays for, respectively, \( f(t, \omega(t), a(t, \omega)) \) solving the Cauchy problem (4.50), and \( f(t, \omega(t), g(t, \omega)) \) solving the Cauchy problem (4.52).

Let us emphasize again that the hedger’s profit-and-loss depends explicitly on the Gamma of the option and on the distance of the Black-Scholes volatility from the realized volatility during the lifetime of the contract.

Proof. The integrability of \( H^A, H^G \) in \((\Omega, \mathbb{P})\) follows from the Feynman-Kac representation of the solution of the Cauchy problems with final datum (4.50), (4.52).

By the functional representation in (4.49), respectively (4.51), the pricing functional \( F \) is smooth, i.e. it satisfies (4.23). If the assumptions of Proposition 4.5 are satisfied, we can thus apply Proposition 4.2 to prove the robustness property. We have to check the convexity of the map \( v^H(\cdot; t, \omega) \) in (4.41) for all \((t, \omega) \in [0, T] \times Q(\Omega, \Pi)\). Concerning the arithmetic Asian
4.7. Examples

call option, we have:

\[ v^{H_A}(e; t, \omega) = H^A(\omega(1 + e1_{[t,T]})) \]
\[ = \left( \frac{1}{T} \left( \int_0^t \omega(u) du + \int_t^T \omega(u)(1 + e) \right) - K \right)^+ \]
\[ = \left( m(T) + \frac{e}{T}(a(T) - a(t)) - K \right)^+ \]
\[ = \frac{a(T) - a(t)}{T} (e - K)^+ , \]

where \( m(T) = \frac{1}{T}a(T) \) and \( K' = \frac{KT - a(T)}{a(T) - a(t)} \), which is clearly convex in \( e \).

As for the geometric Asian call option, we have:

\[ v^{H^G}(e; t, \omega) = H^G(\omega(1 + e1_{[t,T]})) \]
\[ = \left( e^{1/2} \int_0^t \log \omega(u) du e^{1/2} \int_t^T \log(\omega(u)(1 + e)) du - K \right)^+ \]

which is a convex function in \( e \) around 0, since \( \omega \) is bounded away from 0 on \([0, T]\). Indeed:

\( e \mapsto \int_0^T \log(\omega(u)(1 + e)) du \) is convex since it is the integral in \( u \) of a function of \((u, e)\) which is convex in \( e \) by preservation of convexity under affine transformation; then \( e \mapsto e^{1/2} \int_0^T \log(\omega(u)(1 + e)) du \) is convex because it is the composition of a convex increasing function and a convex function.

**Remark 4.19.** The robustness of the Black-Scholes-delta hedging for the arithmetic Asian option is in fact a direct consequence of Proposition 4.2.

Indeed, in the Black-Scholes framework, the Gamma of an Asian call option is non-negative, as it has been shown for different closed-form analytic approximations found in the literature. An example can be seen in [76], where the density of the arithmetic mean is approximated by a reciprocal gamma distribution which is the limit distribution of an infinite sum of correlated log-normal random variables. This already implies the condition (4.42).

**Hobson-Rogers delta-hedging for Asian options model**

We have already shown in Section 4.3 that the Hobson-Rogers model admits a smooth pricing functional for suitable non-path-dependent payoffs.
Di Francesco and Pascucci \cite{DiFrancescoPascucci2003} proved that also the problem of pricing and hedging a geometric Asian option can be similarly reduced to a degenerate PDE belonging to the class of Kolmogorov equations, for which a classical solution exists. In this case, the pricing functional can be written as a function of four variables

\[
F(t, \omega) = u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega), g(t, \omega)),
\]

where \(u\) is the classical solution of the following Cauchy problem on \([0, T] \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}\):

\[
\begin{cases}
 \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2(x_1 - x_2)^2(\partial_{x_1}^2 u - \partial_{x_2}^2 u) + \lambda(x_1 - x_2)\partial_{x_2} u + x_1 \partial_{x_3} u - \partial_t u = 0, \\
u(0, x_1, x_2, x_3) = \Psi^G(e^{x_1}, \frac{x_3}{T}).
\end{cases}
\]

The following claim is the analogous of Corollary 4.1 for the Hobson-Rogers model; the proof is omitted because it follows exactly the same arguments as the proof of Corollary 4.1.

**Corollary 4.2.** If the Hobson-Roger volatility in (4.44) over-estimates the realized market volatility, i.e.

\[
\sigma(t, \omega) = \sigma^n(o(t, \omega)) \geq \sigma^{mkt}(t, \omega) \quad \forall \omega \in \mathcal{A} \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})
\]

then the Hobson-Rogers delta hedge for the geometric Asian option with pay-off functional

\[
H^G(S_T) = (e^{\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \log S(t) dt} - K)^+
\]

is robust on \(\mathcal{A} \cap \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})\). Moreover, the hedging error at maturity is given by

\[
\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left(\sigma^n(o(t, \omega))^2 - \sigma^{mkt}(t, \omega)^2\right) \omega^2(t) \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_1^2} u(T-t, \log \omega(t), \log \omega(t) - o(t, \omega), g(t, \omega)) dt,
\]

where \(u\) is the solution of the Cauchy problem (4.54).
Dynamic hedging of barrier options

Barrier options are examples of path-dependent derivatives for which delta-hedging strategies are not robust.

Consider the case of an up-and-out barrier call option with strike price $K$ and barrier $U$, whose payoff functional is

$$H(S_T) = (S(T) - K)^+1_{S(T) < U}.$$  \hfill (4.55)

The pricing functional of a barrier option is determined by regular solutions of classical Dirichlet problems, opportunely stopped at the barrier hitting times. The pricing functional for the claim with payoff \[(4.55)\] is given, at time $t \in [0, T]$, by

$$F(t, \omega) = f(t \wedge \tau_U(\omega), \omega(t \wedge \tau_U(\omega))),$$

where $\tau_U(\omega) := \inf\{t \geq 0 : \omega(t) \in [U, +\infty)\}$ and $f$ is the $C^{1,2}([0, T) \times (0, U)) \cap C([0, T] \times (0, U))$ solution of the following Dirichlet problem:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll}
\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2(t)x^2\partial_{xx}f(t, x) + \partial_t f(t, x) = 0, & (t, x) \in [0, T) \times (0, U), \\
f(t, U) = 0, & t \in [0, T], \\
f(T, x) = H(x), & x \in (0, U).
\end{array} \right.$$  \hfill (4.56)

The delta-hedging strategy is then given by

$$\phi(t, \omega) = \partial_x f(t, \omega(t))1_{[0, \tau_U(\omega))}(t).$$

Analogously to the application in Section 4.7.2, we can compute the hedging error of the delta hedge for the barrier option. However, unlike for Asian options, the delta hedge for barrier options fails to have the robustness property, because the price collapses at $t = \tau_U$, disrupting the positivity of the Gamma. On the other end, the Gamma of barrier options can be quite large in magnitude, so it is crucial to have a good estimate of volatility, in order to keep the hedging error as small as possible.

Remark 4.20. Let $H$ be the payoff functional of the up-and-out barrier call option with strike price $K$ and barrier $U$ in \[(4.55)\]. Then the Black-Scholes
delta hedge for $H$ is not robust to volatility mis-specifications. Any mismatch between the model volatility $\sigma$ and the realized volatility $\sigma^{mkt}$ is amplified by the Gamma of the option as the barrier is approached and the resulting error can have an arbitrary sign due to the non-constant sign of the option Gamma near the barrier.

The assumptions of Proposition 4.5 are not satisfied, indeed: for any $(t, \omega) \in [0, T] \times C([0, T], \mathbb{R}_+),$

$$v^H(e; t, \omega) = (\omega(T) + \omega(T)e - K)^+ 1_{(0, U)} \left( \sup_{s \in [0, T]} (\omega(s)(1 + e 1_{[t, T]}(s))) \right)$$

$$= \omega(T) \left( e - \frac{K - \omega(T)}{\omega(T)} \right)^+ 1_{(0, U)}(\gamma(e))$$

$$= \omega(T) \left( e - \frac{K - \omega(T)}{\omega(T)} \right)^+ 1_{\gamma^{-1}((0, U))}(e)$$

where $\gamma : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}_+$,

$$\gamma(e) := \sup_{s \in [0, T]} (\omega(s)(1 + e 1_{[t, T]}(s)))$$

$$= \max \left\{ \overline{\omega}(t), (1 + e) \sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s) \right\}$$

$$= \sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s) \left( e - \frac{\overline{\omega}(t) - \sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s)}{\sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s)} \right)^+ + \overline{\omega}(t).$$

$\gamma^{-1}(A)$ denote the counter-image of $A \subset \mathbb{R}_+$ via $\gamma$, and $\overline{\omega}(t) := \sup_{s \in [0, t]} \omega(s).$

Since $\gamma$ is a positive non-decreasing continuous function, we have

$$\gamma^{-1}((0, U)) = \begin{cases} \emptyset, & \text{if } U \leq \overline{\omega}(t) \\ (-\infty, \frac{U - \sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s)}{\sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s)}) , & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Thus, there exist an interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}, 0 \in I,$ such that $v^H(\cdot; t, \omega) : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is convex if and only if $U > \sup_{s \in [t, T]} \omega(s).$ However, Proposition 4.5 requires the map $v^H(\cdot; t, \omega)$ to be convex for all $\omega \in \text{supp}(S, \mathbb{P})$ in order to imply vertical convex of the value functional.

Thus, we observe that unlike the case of Asian options, delta-hedging strategies do not provide a robust approach to the hedging of barrier options.
Chapter 5

Adjoint expansions in local
Lévy models

This chapter is based on a joint work with Stefano Pagliarani and Andrea Pascucci, published in 2013 [82].

Analytical approximations and their applications to finance have been studied by several authors in the last decades because of their great importance in the calibration and risk management processes. The large body of the existing literature (see, for instance, [53], [59], [107], [52], [7], [25], [17]) is mainly devoted to purely diffusive (local and stochastic volatility) models or, as in [6] and [111], to local volatility (LV) models with Poisson jumps, which can be approximated by Gaussian kernels.

The classical result by Hagan [53] is a particular case of our expansion, in the sense that for a standard LV model with time-homogeneous coefficients our formulae reduce to Hagan’s ones (see Section 5.2.1). While Hagan’s results are heuristic, here we also provide explicit error estimates for time-dependent coefficients as well.

The results of Section 5.2 on the approximation of the transition density for jump-diffusions are essentially analogous to the results in [6]: however in [6] ad-hoc Malliavin techniques for LV models with Merton jumps are used and only a first order expansion is derived. Here we use different techniques
(PDE and Fourier methods) which allows to handle the much more general class of local Lévy processes: this is a very significant difference from previous research. Moreover we derive higher order approximations, up to the 4th order.

Our approach is also more general than the so-called “parametrix” methods recently proposed in [25] and [17] as an approximation method in finance. The parametrix method is based on repeated application of Duhamel’s principle which leads to a recursive integral representation of the fundamental solution: the main problem with the parametrix approach is that, even in the simplest case of a LV model, it is hard to compute explicitly the parametrix approximations of order greater than one. As a matter of fact, [25] and [17] only contain first order formulae. The adjoint expansion method contains the parametrix approximation as a particular case, that is at order zero and in the purely diffusive case. However the general construction of the adjoint expansion is substantially different and allows us to find explicit higher-order formulae for the general class of local Lévy processes.

5.1 General framework

In a local Lévy model, we assume that the log-price process $X$ of the underlying asset of interest solves the SDE

$$dX(t) = \mu(t, X(t-))dt + \sigma(t, X(t))dW(t) + dJ(t).$$  \hfill (5.1)

In (5.1), $W$ is a standard real Brownian motion on a filtered probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, (\mathcal{F}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}, \mathbb{P})$ with the usual assumptions on the filtration and $J$ is a pure-jump Lévy process, independent of $W$, with Lévy triplet $(\mu_1, 0, \nu)$. In order to guarantee the martingale property for the discounted asset price $\tilde{S}(t) := S_0e^{X(t)-rt}$, we set

$$\mu(t, x) = \bar{r} - \mu_1 - \frac{\sigma^2(t, x)}{2},$$  \hfill (5.2)

where

$$\bar{r} = r - \int_{\mathbb{R}} (e^y - 1 - yI_{\{|y|<1\}}) \nu(dy).$$  \hfill (5.3)
5.1. General framework

We denote by
\[ X^{t,x} : T \mapsto X^{t,x}(T) \]
the solution of (5.1) starting from \( x \) at time \( t \) and by
\[ \varphi_{X^{t,x}(T)}(\xi) = E \left[ e^{i\xi X^{t,x}(T)} \right], \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}, \]
the characteristic function of \( X^{t,x}(T) \). Provided that \( X^{t,x}(T) \) has density \( \Gamma(t, x; T, \cdot) \), then its characteristic function is equal to
\[ \varphi_{X^{t,x}(T)}(\xi) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\xi y} \Gamma(t, x; T, y) dy. \]

Notice that \( \Gamma(t, x; T, y) \) is the fundamental solution of the Kolmogorov operator
\[
Lu(t, x) = \frac{\sigma^2(t, x)}{2} \left( \partial_{xx} - \partial_x \right) u(t, x) + r_0 \partial_x u(t, x) + \partial_t u(t, x) \\
+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (u(t, x + y) - u(t, x)) \nu(dy).
\]

(5.4)

Example 5.1. Let \( J \) be a compound Poisson process with Gaussian jumps, that is
\[ J(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{N(t)} Z_n \]
where \( N(t) \) is a Poisson process with intensity \( \lambda \) and \( Z_n \) are i.i.d. random variables independent of \( N(t) \) with Normal distribution \( \mathcal{N}_{m, \delta^2} \). In this case, \( \nu = \lambda \mathcal{N}_{m, \delta^2} \) and
\[ \mu_1 = \int_{|y|<1} y \nu(dy). \]

Therefore the drift condition (5.2) reduces to
\[ \mu(t, x) = r_0 - \frac{\sigma^2(t, x)}{2}, \]
(5.5)

where
\[ r_0 = r - \int_{\mathbb{R}} (e^y - 1) \nu(dy) = r - \lambda \left( e^{m+\frac{\delta^2}{2}} - 1 \right). \]
(5.6)

Moreover, the characteristic operator can be written in the equivalent form
\[
Lu(t, x) = \frac{\sigma^2(t, x)}{2} \left( \partial_{xx} - \partial_x \right) u(t, x) + r_0 \partial_x u(t, x) + \partial_t u(t, x) \\
+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (u(t, x + y) - u(t, x)) \nu(dy).
\]
(5.7)
Example 5.2. Let \( J \) be a Variance-Gamma process (cf. [72]) obtained by subordinating a Brownian motion with drift \( \theta \) and standard deviation \( \gamma \), by a Gamma process with variance \( \kappa \) and unitary mean. In this case the Lévy measure is given by

\[
\nu(dx) = e^{-\lambda_1 x} \frac{1}{\kappa x} \mathbf{1}_{\{x>0\}} dx + e^{\lambda_2 x} \frac{1}{\kappa |x|} \mathbf{1}_{\{x<0\}} dx
\]  

(5.8)

where

\[
\lambda_1 = \left( \sqrt{\frac{\theta^2 \kappa^2}{4} + \frac{\gamma^2 \kappa}{2} + \frac{\theta \kappa}{2}} \right)^{-1}, \quad \lambda_2 = \left( \sqrt{\frac{\theta^2 \kappa^2}{4} + \frac{\gamma^2 \kappa}{2} - \frac{\theta \kappa}{2}} \right)^{-1}.
\]

The risk-neutral drift in (5.1) is equal to

\[
\mu(t,x) = r_0 - \frac{\sigma^2(t,x)}{2}
\]

where

\[
r_0 = r + \frac{1}{\kappa} \log \left( 1 - \lambda_1^{-1} \right) (1 + \lambda_2^{-1}) = r + \frac{1}{\kappa} \log \left( 1 - \kappa \left( \theta + \frac{\gamma^2}{2} \right) \right), \quad (5.9)
\]

and the expression of the characteristic operator \( L \) is the same as in (5.7) with \( \nu \) and \( r_0 \) as in (5.8) and (5.9) respectively.

Our goal is to give an accurate analytic approximation of the characteristic function and, when possible, of the transition density of \( X \). The general idea is to consider an approximation of the volatility coefficient \( \sigma \). More precisely, to shorten notations we set

\[
a(t,x) = \sigma^2(t,x)
\]

(5.10)

and we assume that \( a \) is regular enough: more precisely, for a fixed \( N \in \mathbb{N} \), we make the following

**Assumption A_\(N\).** The function \( a = a(t,x) \) is continuously differentiable with respect to \( x \) up to order \( N \). Moreover, the function \( a \) and its derivatives in \( x \) are bounded and Lipschitz continuous in \( x \), uniformly with respect to \( t \).
5.1. General framework

Next, we fix a basepoint $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}$ and consider the $N$th-order Taylor polynomial of $a(t, x)$ about $\bar{x}$:

$$\alpha_0(t) + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n(t)(x - \bar{x})^n,$$

where $\alpha_0(t) = a(t, \bar{x})$ and

$$\alpha_n(t) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^n a(t, \bar{x})}{n!}, \quad n \leq N. \tag{5.11}$$

Then we introduce the $n$th-order approximation of $L$:

$$L_n := L_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k(t)(x - \bar{x})^k (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x), \quad n \leq N, \tag{5.12}$$

where

$$L_0 u(t, x) = \frac{\alpha_0(t)}{2} (\partial_{xx} u(t, x) - \partial_x u(t, x)) + \bar{r} \partial_x u(t, x) + \partial_t u(t, x)$$

$$+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (u(t, x + y) - u(t, x) - \partial_x u(t, x)y 1_{\{|y|<1\}}) \nu(dy). \tag{5.13}$$

Following the perturbation method proposed in [81], and also recently used in [48] for the approximation of Asian options, the $n$th-order approximation of the fundamental solution $\Gamma$ of $L$ is defined by

$$\Gamma^n(t, x; T, y) := \sum_{k=0}^{n} G^k(t, x; T, y), \quad t < T, \ x, y \in \mathbb{R}. \tag{5.14}$$

The leading term $G^0$ of the expansion in (5.14) is the fundamental solution of $L_0$ and, for any $(T, y) \in \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}$ and $k \leq N$, the functions $G^k(\cdot, \cdot; T, y)$ are defined recursively in terms of the solutions of the following sequence of Cauchy problems on the strip $]0, T[ \times \mathbb{R}$:

$$\begin{align*}
L_0 G^k(t, x; T, y) &= - \sum_{h=1}^{k} (L_h - L_{h-1}) G^{k-h}(t, x; T, y) \\
&= - \sum_{h=1}^{k} \alpha_h(t)(x - \bar{x})^h (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) G^{k-h}(t, x; T, y), \tag{5.15} \\
G^k(T, x; T, y) &= 0.
\end{align*}$$
In the sequel, when we want to specify explicitly the dependence of the approximation $\Gamma^n$ on the basepoint $\bar{x}$, we shall use the notation

$$\Gamma^{\bar{x},n}(t,x;T,y) \equiv \Gamma^n(t,x;T,y).$$  \(5.16\)

In Section 5.2 we show that, in the case of a LV model with Gaussian jumps, it is possible to find the explicit solutions to the problems (5.15) by an iterative argument. When general Lévy jumps are considered, it is still possible to compute the explicit solution of problems (5.15) in the Fourier space. Indeed, in Section 5.3, we get an expansion of the characteristic function $\varphi_{X_{t,x}(T)}$ having as leading term the characteristic function of the process whose Kolmogorov operator is $L_0$ in (5.13).

We explicitly notice that, if the function $\sigma$ only depends on time, then the approximation in (5.14) is exact at order zero.

We now provide global error estimates for the approximation in the purely diffusive case. The proof is postponed to the Appendix (Section 5.5).

**Theorem 5.3.** Assume the parabolicity condition

$$m \leq \frac{a(t,x)}{2} \leq M, \quad (t,x) \in [0,T] \times \mathbb{R},$$  \(5.17\)

where $m, M$ are positive constants and let $\bar{x} = x$ or $\bar{x} = y$ in (5.16). Under Assumption $A_{N+1}$, for any $\varepsilon > 0$ we have

$$|\Gamma(t,x;T,y) - \Gamma^{\bar{x},N}(t,x;T,y)| \leq g_N(T-t)\bar{\Gamma}^{M+\varepsilon}(t,x;T,y),$$  \(5.18\)

for $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and $t \in [0,T]$, where $\bar{\Gamma}^M$ is the Gaussian fundamental solution of the heat operator

$$M\partial_{xx} + \partial_t,$$

and $g_N(s) = O\left(s^{\frac{N+1}{2}}\right)$ as $s \to 0^+$.

Theorem 5.3 improves some known results in the literature. In particular in [7] asymptotic estimates for option prices in terms of $(T-t)^{\frac{N+1}{2}}$ are proved under a stronger assumption on the regularity of the coefficients, equivalent to Assumption $A_{3N+2}$. Here we provide error estimates for the transition
5.2. LV models with Gaussian jumps

In this section we consider the SDE (5.1) with \( J \) as in Example 5.1, namely \( J \) is a compound Poisson process with Gaussian jumps. Clearly, in the particular case of a constant diffusion coefficient \( \sigma(t,x) \equiv \sigma \), we have the classical Merton jump-diffusion model [75]:

\[
X_{\text{Merton}}(t) = \left( r_0 - \frac{\sigma^2}{2} \right) t + \sigma W(t) + J(t),
\]

with \( r_0 \) as in (5.6). We recall that the analytical approximation of this kind of models has been recently studied by Benhamou, Gobet and Miri in [6] by Malliavin calculus techniques.

The expression of the pricing operator \( L \) was given in (5.7) and in this case the leading term of the approximation (cf. (5.13)) is equal to

\[
L_0 v(t,x) = \frac{\alpha_0(t)}{2} (\partial_{xx} v(t,x) - \partial_x v(t,x)) + r_0 \partial_x v(t,x) + \partial_t v(t,x) + \int_{\mathbb{R}} (v(t,x+y) - v(t,x)) \nu(dy).
\]

The fundamental solution of \( L_0 \) is the transition density of a Merton process, that is

\[
G^0(t,x;T,y) = e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda(T-t)^n}{n!} \Gamma_n(t,x;T,y),
\]

where

\[
\Gamma_n(t,x;T,y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi (A(t,T) + n\delta^2)}} e^{-\frac{(x-y+(T-t)r_0 - \frac{1}{2} A(t,T) + nm)^2}{2(A(t,T)+n\delta^2)}},
\]

\[
A(t,T) = \int_t^T \alpha_0(s)ds.
\]
In order to determine the explicit solution to problems (5.15) for \( k \geq 1 \), we use some elementary properties of the functions \( (\Gamma_n)_{n \geq 0} \). The following lemma can be proved as Lemma 2.2 in [81].

**Lemma 5.4.** For any \( x, y, \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}, \ t < s < T \) and \( n, k \in \mathbb{N}_0 \), we have

\[
\Gamma_{n+k}(t, x; T, y) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta) \Gamma_k(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta, \tag{5.22}
\]

\[
\partial_y^k \Gamma_n(t, x; T, y) = (-1)^k \partial_y^k \Gamma_n(t, x; T, y), \tag{5.23}
\]

\[
(y - \bar{x})^k \Gamma_n(t, x; T, y) = V_{t,T,x,n}^k \Gamma_n(t, x; T, y), \tag{5.24}
\]

where \( V_{t,T,x,n} \) is the operator defined by

\[
V_{t,T,x,n} f(x) = \left( x - \bar{x} + (T - t)r_0 - \frac{1}{2} A(t, T) + nm \right) f(x) \tag{5.25}
\]

\[
+ \left( A(t, T) + n\delta^2 \right) \partial_x f(x).
\]

Our first results are the following first and second order expansions of the transition density \( \Gamma \).

**Theorem 5.5 (1st order expansion).** The solution \( G^1 \) of the Cauchy problem (5.15) with \( k = 1 \) is given by

\[
G^1(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{n,k=0}^{\infty} J^1_{n,k}(t, T, x) \Gamma_{n+k}(t, x; T, y). \tag{5.26}
\]

where \( J^1_{n,k}(t, T, x) \) is the differential operator defined by

\[
J^1_{n,k}(t, T, x) = e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n!k!} \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)(s-t)^n(T-s)^k V_{s,T,x,n} ds \partial_{xx} - \partial_x. \tag{5.27}
\]

**Proof.** By the standard representation formula for solutions to the non-homogeneous parabolic Cauchy problem (5.15) with null final condition, we have

\[
G^1(t, x; T, y) = \int_t^T \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(t, x; s, \eta) \alpha_1(s)(\eta - \bar{x}) \cdot (\partial_{\eta\eta} - \partial_\eta) G^0(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds =
\]
5.2. LV models with Gaussian jumps

(by (5.24))

\[
= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^n}{n!} \int_T^t \alpha_1(s) e^{-\lambda(s-t)}(s-t)^n ds.
\]

\[
\cdot V_{t,s,x,n} \int_\mathbb{R} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta)(\partial_\eta - \partial_\eta)G_{\theta}^0(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds =
\]

(by parts)

\[
= e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n,k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n!k!} \int_T^t \alpha_1(s)(T-s)^k(s-t)^n ds.
\]

\[
\cdot V_{t,s,x,n} \int_\mathbb{R} (\partial_{\eta_\eta} + \partial_\eta)(\partial_\eta - \partial_\eta)\Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta)\Gamma_k(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds =
\]

(by (5.23) and (5.22))

\[
= e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n,k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n!k!} \int_T^t \alpha_1(s)(T-s)^k(s-t)^n V_{t,s,x,n} ds.
\]

\[
\cdot (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)\Gamma_{n+k}(t, x; T, y)
\]

and this proves (5.26)-(5.27).

Remark 5.6. A straightforward but tedious computation shows that the operator \(J_{1,n,k}^1(t, T, x)\) can be rewritten in the more convenient form

\[
J_{1,n,k}^1(t, T, x) = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sum_{j=0}^{1} f_{n,k,i,j}^1(t, T)(x - \bar{x})^j \partial_x^i,
\]

for some deterministic functions \(f_{n,k,i,j}^1\).

Theorem 5.7 (2nd order expansion). The solution \(G^2\) of the Cauchy problem (5.15) with \(k = 2\) is given by

\[
G^2(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{n,h,k=0}^{\infty} J_{n,h,k}^2(t, T, x)\Gamma_{n+h+k}(t, x; T, y)
\]

\[
+ \sum_{n,k=0}^{\infty} J_{n,k}^{2,2}(t, T, x)\Gamma_{n+k}(t, x; T, y),
\]
where
\[
J_{n,h,k}^{2,1}(t, T, x) = \frac{\lambda^n}{n!} \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)e^{-\lambda(s-t)}(s-t)^n V_{t,s,x,n}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)\tilde{J}_{n,h,k}^1(t, s, T, x)ds
\]
\[
J_{n,k}^{2,2}(t, T, x) = e^{-\lambda(T-t)}\frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n!k!} \int_t^T \alpha_2(s)(s-t)^n(T-s)^k V_{t,s,x,n}^2(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)ds
\]
and \(\tilde{J}_{n,h,k}^1\) is the “adjoint” operator of \(J_{h,k}^1\), defined by
\[
\tilde{J}_{n,h,k}^1(t, s, T, x) = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sum_{j=0}^{1} f_{h,k,i,j}^1(s, T)V_{t,s,x,n}^j \partial_x^i
\]
with \(f_{h,k,i,j}^1\) as in (5.28). Also in this case we have the alternative representation
\[
J_{n,h,k}^{2,1}(t, T, x) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} \sum_{j=0}^{2} f_{n,h,k,i,j}^{2,1}(t, T)(x - \bar{x})^j \partial_x^i
\]
\[
J_{n,k}^{2,2}(t, T, x) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} \sum_{j=0}^{2} f_{n,k,i,j}^{2,2}(t, T)(x - \bar{x})^j \partial_x^i
\]
with \(f_{n,h,k,i,j}^{2,1}\) and \(f_{n,k,i,j}^{2,2}\) deterministic functions.

**Proof.** We show a preliminary result: from formulae (5.28) and (5.30) for \(J^1\) and \(\tilde{J}^1\) respectively, it follows that
\[
\int_\mathbb{R} \Gamma_\eta(t, x; s, \eta) J_{n,h,k}^1(s, T, \eta) \Gamma_{h+k}(s, \eta; T, y)d\eta =
\]
(by (5.23) and (5.24))
\[
= \int_\mathbb{R} \tilde{J}_{n,h,k}^1(s, T, x) \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta) \Gamma_{h+k}(s, \eta; T, y)d\eta
\]
\[
= \tilde{J}_{n,h,k}^1(s, T, x) \int_\mathbb{R} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta) \Gamma_{h+k}(s, \eta; T, y)d\eta
\]
(by (5.22))
\[
= \tilde{J}_{n,h,k}^1(s, T, x) \Gamma_{n+h+k}(x, t; T, y).
\]
5.2. LV models with Gaussian jumps

Now we have

\[ G^2(t, x; T, y) = I_1 + I_2, \]

where, proceeding as before,

\[
I_1 = \int_t^T \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(t, x; s, \eta) \alpha_1(s)(\eta - \bar{x})(\partial_{\eta\eta} - \partial_{\eta}) G^1(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]

\[
= \sum_{n, h, k=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda^n}{n!} \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)e^{-\lambda(s-t)}(s - t)^n.
\]

\[
\cdot V_{t, s, x, n}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta)(\partial_{\eta\eta} - \partial_{\eta}) J_{h, k}^1(s, \eta; T, y) \Gamma_{h+k}(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]

= \sum_{n, h, k=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda^n}{n!} \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)e^{-\lambda(s-t)}(s - t)^n.

\[
\cdot V_{t, s, x, n}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta)(\partial_{\eta\eta} - \partial_{\eta}) J_{h, k}^1(s, \eta; T, y) \Gamma_{h+k}(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds = (\text{by } (5.33))
\]

\[
= \sum_{n, h, k=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda^n}{n!} \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)e^{-\lambda(s-t)}(s - t)^n V_{t, s, x, n}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) \bar{J}_{n, h, k}(s, T, x) ds.
\]

\[
\cdot \Gamma_{n+h+k}(x, t; T, y)
\]

\[
= \sum_{n, h, k=0}^{+\infty} J_{n, h, k}^2(t, T, x) \Gamma_{n+h+k}(t, x; T, y)
\]

and

\[
I_2 = \int_t^T \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(t, x; s, \eta) \alpha_2(s)(\eta - \bar{x})^2(\partial_{\eta\eta} - \partial_{\eta}) G^0(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]

\[
= e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n, k=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n! k!} \int_t^T \alpha_2(s)(T - s)^k(s - t)^n.
\]

\[
\cdot V_{t, s, x, n}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta)(\partial_{\eta\eta} - \partial_{\eta}) \Gamma_{k}(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]

\[
= e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n, k=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n! k!} \int_t^T \alpha_2(s)(T - s)^k(s - t)^n.
\]

\[
\cdot V_{t, s, x, n}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \Gamma_n(t, x; s, \eta)\Gamma_{k}(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]
\[= e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n,k=0}^{+\infty} \frac{\lambda^{n+k}}{n!k!} \int_{t}^{T} \alpha_2(s)(T-s)^k(s-t)^n.\]

\[\cdot V_{t,s,x,n}^2 ds \left( \partial_{xx} - \partial_x \right) \Gamma_{n+k}(t,x;T,y)\]

\[= \sum_{n,k=0}^{+\infty} J_{n,k}^{2,2}(t,T,x) \Gamma_{n+k}(t,x;T,y).\]

This concludes the proof.

**Remark 5.8.** Since the derivatives of a Gaussian density can be expressed in terms of Hermite polynomials, the computation of the terms of the expansion (5.14) is very fast. Indeed, we have

\[\frac{\partial_x^i \Gamma_n(t,x;T,y)}{\Gamma_n(t,x;T,y)} = \frac{(-1)^i h_{i,n}(t,T,x-y)}{(2 (A(t,T) + n\delta^2))^\frac{i}{2}}\]

where

\[h_{i,n}(t,T,z) = H_i\left(\frac{z + (T-t)\mu_0 - \frac{1}{2}A(t,T) + nm}{\sqrt{2(A(t,T) + n\delta^2)}}\right)\]

and \(H_i = H_i(x)\) denotes the Hermite polynomial of degree \(i\). Thus we can rewrite the terms \((G^k)_{k=1,2}\) in (5.26) and (5.29) as follows:

\[G^1(t,x;T,y) = \sum_{n,k=0}^{+\infty} G_{n,k}^1(t,x;T,y) \Gamma_{n+k}(t,x;T,y)\]

\[G^2(t,x;T,y) = \sum_{n,h,k=0}^{+\infty} G_{n,h,k}^{2,1}(t,x;T,y) \Gamma_{n+h+k}(t,x;T,y)\]

\[+ \sum_{n,k=0}^{+\infty} G_{n,k}^{2,2}(t,x;T,y) \Gamma_{n+k}(t,x;T,y),\]

where

\[G_{n,k}^1(t,x;T,y) = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sum_{j=0}^{1} f_{n,k,i,j}^1(t,T)(x-\bar{x})^j \frac{h_{i,n+k}(t,T,x-y)}{(2 (A(t,T) + (n+k)\delta^2))^\frac{i}{2}}\]

\[G_{n,h,k}^{2,1}(t,x;T,y) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} \sum_{j=0}^{1} f_{n,h,k,i,j}^{2,1}(t,T)(x-\bar{x})^j \frac{h_{i,n+h+k}(t,T,x-y)}{(2 (A(t,T) + (n+h+k)\delta^2))^\frac{i}{2}}\]
5.2. LV models with Gaussian jumps

\[ G_{n,k}^{2,2}(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} (-1)^i \sum_{j=0}^{1} f_{n,k,i,j}^{2,2}(t, T)(x - \bar{x})^j \frac{h_{i,n+k}(t, T, x - y)}{(2(A(t, T) + (n + k)^2))^\frac{1}{2}}. \]

In the practical implementation, we truncate the series in (5.20) and (5.34) to a finite number of terms, say \( M \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\} \). Therefore we put

\[ G_M^0(t, x; T, y) = e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n=0}^{M} \frac{\lambda(T-t)^n}{n!} \Gamma_n(t, x; T, y), \]

\[ G_M^1(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{n,k=0}^{M} G_{n,k}^1(t, x; T, y) \Gamma_{n+k}(t, x; T, y), \]

\[ G_M^2(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{n,h,k=0}^{M} G_{n,h,k}^2(t, x; T, y) \Gamma_{n+h+k}(t, x; T, y) + \sum_{n,k=0}^{M} G_{n,k}^{2,2}(t, x; T, y) \Gamma_{n+k}(t, x; T, y), \]

and we approximate the density \( \Gamma \) by

\[ \Gamma_M^2(t, x; T, y) := G_M^0(t, x; T, y) + G_M^1(t, x; T, y) + G_M^2(t, x; T, y). \quad (5.35) \]

Next we denote by \( C(t, S(t)) \) the price at time \( t < T \) of a European option with payoff function \( \varphi \) and maturity \( T \); for instance, \( \varphi(y) = (y - K)^+ \) in the case of a Call option with strike \( K \). From the expansion of the density in (5.35), we get the following second order approximation formula.

**Remark 5.9.** We have

\[ C(t, S(t)) \approx e^{-r(T-t)} u_M(t, \log S(t)) \]
where

\[ u_M(t,x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^+} \frac{1}{S} \Gamma^2_M(t,x;T,\log S) \varphi(S) dS \]

\[ = e^{-\lambda(T-t)} \sum_{n=0}^{M} \frac{(\lambda(T-t))^n}{n!} \text{CBS}_n(t,x) \]

\[ + \sum_{n,k=0}^{M} (J^1_{n,k}(t,T,x) + J^2_{n,k}(t,T,x)) \text{CBS}_{n+k}(t,x) \]

\[ + \sum_{n,h,k=0}^{M} J^2_{n,h,k}(t,T,x) \text{CBS}_{n+h+k}(t,x) \]

(5.36)

and \( \text{CBS}_n(t,x) \) is the BS price\(^1\) under the Gaussian law \( \Gamma_n(t,x;T,\cdot) \) in (5.21), namely

\[ \text{CBS}_n(t,x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^+} \frac{1}{S} \Gamma_n(t,x;T,\log S) \varphi(S) dS. \]

5.2.1 Simplified Fourier approach for LV models

Equation (5.1) with \( J = 0 \) reduces to the standard SDE of a LV model. In this case we can simplify the proof of Theorems 5.5-5.7 by using Fourier analysis methods. Let us first notice that \( L_0 \) in (5.19) becomes

\[ L_0 = \frac{\alpha_0(t)}{2} (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) + r \partial_x + \partial_t, \]

(5.37)

and its fundamental solution is the Gaussian density

\[ G^0(t,x;T,y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi A(t,T)^{\frac{3}{2}}}} e^{-\left(\frac{(x-y+(T-t)r-\frac{1}{2}A(t,T))}{A(t,T)}\right)^2}, \]

with \( A \) as in (5.21).

Corollary 5.1 (1st order expansion). In case of \( \lambda = 0 \), the solution \( G^1 \) in (5.26) is given by

\[ G^1(t,x;T,y) = J^1(t,T,x)G^0(t,x;T,y) \]

(5.38)

\(^1\)Here the BS price is expressed as a function of the time \( t \) and of the log-asset \( x \).
where \( J^1(t, T, x) \) is the differential operator

\[
J^1(t, T, x) = \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)V_{t, s, x}ds (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x),
\]

(5.39)

with \( V_{t, s, x} \equiv V_{t, s, x, 0} \) as in (5.25), that is

\[
V_{t, T, x}f(x) = \left( x - \bar{x} + (T - t)r - \frac{1}{2}A(t, T) \right) f(x) + A(t, T)\partial_x f(x).
\]

Proof. Although the result follows directly from Theorem 5.5, here we propose an alternative proof of formula (5.39). The idea is to determine the solution of the Cauchy problem (5.15) in the Fourier space, where all the computation can be carried out more easily; then, using the fact that the leading term \( G^0 \) of the expansion is a Gaussian kernel, we are able to compute explicitly the inverse Fourier transform to get back to the analytic approximation of the transition density.

Since we aim at showing the main ideas of an alternative approach, for simplicity we only consider the case of time-independent coefficients, precisely we set \( \alpha_0 = 2 \) and \( r = 0 \). In this case we have

\[
L_0 = \partial_{xx} - \partial_x + \partial_t
\]

and the related Gaussian fundamental solution is equal to

\[
G^0(t, x; T, y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi(T - t)}} e^{-\frac{(x-y-(T-t)r)^2}{4(T-t)}}.
\]

Now we apply the Fourier transform (in the variable \( x \)) to the Cauchy problem (5.15) with \( k = 1 \) and we get

\[
\begin{cases}
\partial_t \hat{G}^1(t, \xi; T, y) = (\xi^2 - i\xi) \hat{G}^1(t, \xi; T, y) \\
\quad + \alpha_1(i\partial_\xi + \bar{x}) (-\xi^2 + i\xi) \hat{G}^0(t, \xi; T, y), \\
\hat{G}^1(T, \xi; T, y) = 0, \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}.
\end{cases}
\]

(5.40)

Notice that

\[
\hat{G}^0(t, \xi; T, y) = e^{-\xi^2(T-t) + i\xi(y+(T-t))}.
\]

(5.41)
Therefore the solution to the ordinary differential equation (5.40) is
\[
\hat{G}^1(t, \xi; T, y) = -\alpha_1 \int_t^T e^{(s-t)(-\xi^2+i\xi)} (i\partial_\xi + \bar{x}) \left( (-\xi^2 + i\xi) \hat{G}^0(s, \xi; T, y) \right) ds =
\]
(using the identity \( f(\xi)(i\partial_\xi + \bar{x})(g(\xi)) = (i\partial_\xi + \bar{x})(f(\xi)g(\xi)) - ig(\xi)\partial_\xi f(\xi) \))
\[
= -\alpha_1 \int_t^T (i\partial_\xi + \bar{x}) \left( (-\xi^2 + i\xi)e^{(s-t)(-\xi^2+i\xi)}\hat{G}^0(s, \xi; T, y) \right) ds + i\alpha_1 \int_t^T (-\xi^2 + i\xi) \hat{G}^0(s, \xi; T, y) \partial_\xi e^{(s-t)(-\xi^2+i\xi)} ds =
\]
(by (5.41))
\[
= -\alpha_1 \int_t^T (i\partial_\xi + \bar{x}) \left( (-\xi^2 + i\xi)e^{i\xi(y+(T-t)) - \xi^2(T-t)} \right) ds + i\alpha_1 \int_t^T (-\xi^2 + i\xi)(s-t)(-2\xi + i)e^{i\xi(y+(T-t)) - \xi^2(T-t)} ds =
\]
(again by (5.41))
\[
= -\alpha_1 (T-t)(i\partial_\xi + \bar{x}) \left( (-\xi^2 + i\xi)\hat{G}^0(t, \xi; T, y) \right) + i\alpha_1 \frac{(T-t)^2}{2} (-\xi^2 + i\xi)(-2\xi + i) \hat{G}^0(t, \xi; T, y).
\]
Thus, inverting the Fourier transform, we get
\[
G^1(t, x; T, y) = \alpha_1 (T-t)(x - \bar{x})(\partial_x^2 - \partial_x) G^0(t, x; T, y) +
\]
\[
- \alpha_1 \frac{(T-t)^2}{2} (-2\partial_x^2 + 3\partial_x^2 - \partial_x) G^0(t, x; T, y)
\]
\[
= \alpha_1 \left( (T-t)^2 \partial_x^3 + \left( x - \bar{x} \right)(T-t) - \frac{3}{2} \left( T-t \right)^2 \right) \partial_x^2 G^0(t, x; T, y) +
\]
\[
+ \left( -(x - \bar{x})(T-t) + \frac{(T-t)^2}{2} \right) \partial_x G^0(t, x; T, y),
\]
where the operator acting on \( G^0(t, x; T, y) \) is exactly the same as in (5.39). □
5.2. LV models with Gaussian jumps

Remark 5.10. As in Remark 5.7, operator $J^1(t,T,x)$ can also be rewritten in the form

$$J^1(t,T,x) = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sum_{j=0}^{1} f^1_{i,j}(t,T) (x - \bar{x})^j \partial_x^i,$$

(5.42)

where $f^1_{i,j}$ are deterministic functions whose explicit expression can be easily derived.

The previous argument can be used to prove the following second order expansion.

Corollary 5.2 (2nd order expansion). In case of $\lambda = 0$, the solution $G^2$ in (5.29) is given by

$$G^2(t,x;T,y) = J^2(t,T,x)G^0(t,x;T,y)$$

where

$$J^2(t,T,x) = \int_t^T \alpha_1(s)V_{t,s,x}(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)\tilde{J}^1(t,s,T,x)ds$$

$$+ \int_t^T \alpha_2(s)V^2_{t,s,x}ds (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)$$

(5.43)

and $\tilde{J}^1$ is the “adjoint” operator of $J^1$, defined by

$$\tilde{J}^1(t,s,T,x) = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sum_{j=0}^{1} f^1_{i,j}(s,T)V^j_{t,s,x} \partial_x^i$$

with $f^1_{i,j}$ as in (5.42).

Remark 5.11. In a standard LV model, the leading operator of the approximation, i.e. $L_0$ in (5.37), has a Gaussian density $G^0$ and this allowed us to use the inverse Fourier transform in order to get the approximated density. This approach does not work in the general case of models with jumps because typically the explicit expression of the fundamental solution of an integro-differential equation is not available. On the other hand, for several Lévy processes used in finance, the characteristic function is known explicitly even if the density is not. This suggests that the argument used in this section...
may be adapted to obtain an approximation of the characteristic function of the process instead of its density. This is what we are going to investigate in Section 5.3.

5.3 Local Lévy models

In this section, we provide an expansion of the characteristic function for the local Lévy model (5.1). We denote by
\[ \hat{\Gamma}(t,x;T,\xi) = \mathcal{F}(\Gamma(t,x;T,\cdot))(\xi) \]
the Fourier transform, with respect to the second spatial variable, of the transition density \( \Gamma(t,x;T,\cdot) \); clearly, \( \hat{\Gamma}(t,x;T,\xi) \) is the characteristic function of \( X_{t,x}(T) \). Then, by applying the Fourier transform to the expansion (5.14), we find
\[ \varphi_{X_{t,x}(T)}(\xi) \approx \sum_{k=0}^{n} \hat{G}^k(t,x;T,\xi). \] (5.44)

Now we recall that \( G^k(t,x;T,y) \) is defined, as a function of the variables \( (t,x) \), in terms of the sequence of Cauchy problems (5.15). Since the Fourier transform in (5.44) is performed with respect to the variable \( y \), in order to take advantage of such a transformation it seems natural to characterize \( G^k(t,x;T,y) \) as a solution of the adjoint operator in the dual variables \( (T,y) \).

To be more specific, we recall the definition of adjoint operator. Let \( L \) be the operator in (5.4); then its adjoint operator \( \tilde{L} \) satisfies (actually, it is defined by) the identity
\[
\int_{\mathbb{R}^2} u(t,x)Lv(t,x)dxdt = \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} v(t,x)\tilde{L}u(t,x)dxdt
\]
for all \( u, v \in C_0^\infty \). More explicitly, by recalling notation (5.10), we have
\[
\tilde{L}^{(T,y)}u(T,y) = \frac{a(T,y)}{2} \partial_{yy}u(T,y) + b(T,y)\partial_yu(T,y) \\
- \partial_Tu(T,y) + c(T,y)u(T,y) \\
+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (u(T,y + z) - u(T,y) - z\partial_yu(T,y)1_{\{|z|<1\}}) \tilde{\nu}(dz),
\]
5.3. Local Lévy models

where

\[ b(T, y) = \partial_y a(T, y) - \left( \bar{r} - \frac{a(T, y)}{2} \right), \quad c(T, y) = \frac{1}{2} (\partial_{yy} + \partial_y) a(T, y), \]

and \( \bar{\nu} \) is the Lévy measure with reverted jumps, i.e. \( \bar{\nu}(dx) = \nu(-dx) \). Here the superscript in \( \widetilde{L}^{(T,y)} \) is indicative of the fact that the operator \( \widetilde{L} \) is acting in the variables \( (T, y) \).

By a classical result (cf., for instance, [51]) the fundamental solution \( \Gamma(t, x; T, y) \) of \( L \) is also a solution of \( \widetilde{L} \) in the dual variables, that is

\[ \widetilde{L}^{(T,y)} \Gamma(t, x; T, y) = 0, \quad t < T, \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}. \] (5.45)

Going back to approximation (5.44), the idea is to consider the series of the dual Cauchy problems of (5.15) in order to solve them by Fourier-transforming in the variable \( y \) and finally get an approximation of \( \varphi_{X^{t,x}(T)} \).

For sake of simplicity, from now on we only consider the case of time-independent coefficients: the general case can be treated in a completely analogous way. First of all, we consider the integro-differential operator \( L_0 \) in (5.13), which in this case becomes

\[
L_0^{(t,x)} u(t, x) = \frac{\alpha_0}{2} (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) u(t, x) + \bar{r} \partial_x u(t, x) + \partial_t u(t, x) \\
+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (u(t, x + y) - u(t, x) - y \partial_x u(t, x) 1_{\{|y| < 1\}}) \nu(dy),
\] (5.46)

and its adjoint operator

\[
\widetilde{L}_0^{(T,y)} u(T, y) = \frac{\alpha_0}{2} (\partial_{yy} + \partial_y) u(T, y) - \bar{r} \partial_y u(T, y) - \partial_T u(T, y) \\
+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (u(T, y + z) - u(T, y) - z \partial_y u(T, y) 1_{\{|z| < 1\}}) \bar{\nu}(dz).
\] (5.47)

By (5.45), for any \( (t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \), the fundamental solution \( G^0(t, x; T, y) \) of \( L_0 \) solves the dual Cauchy problem

\[
\begin{cases}
\widetilde{L}_0^{(T,y)} G^0(t, x; T, y) = 0, & T > t, \quad y \in \mathbb{R}, \\
G^0(t, x; t, \cdot) = \delta_x.
\end{cases}
\] (5.48)
It is remarkable that a similar result holds for the higher order terms of the approximation (5.44). Indeed, let us denote by \( L_n \) the \( n \)th order approximation of \( L \) in (5.12):

\[
L_n = L_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k (x - \bar{x})^k (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)
\]  

(5.49)

Then we have the following result.

**Theorem 5.12.** For any \( k \geq 1 \) and \((t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^2\), the function \( G^k(t, x; \cdot, \cdot) \) in (5.15) is the solution of the following dual Cauchy problem on \([t, +\infty[ \times \mathbb{R}\):

\[
\begin{cases}
\tilde{L}_0^{(T, y)} G^k(t, x; T, y) = - \sum_{h=1}^{k} \left( \tilde{L}_h^{(T, y)} - \tilde{L}_{h-1}^{(T, y)} \right) G^{k-h}(t, x; T, y), \\
G^k(t, x; t, y) = 0, \quad y \in \mathbb{R},
\end{cases}
\]

(5.50)

where

\[
\tilde{L}_h^{(T, y)} - \tilde{L}_{h-1}^{(T, y)} = \alpha_h (y - \bar{x})^{h-2} \left( (y - \bar{x})^2 \partial_{yy} + (y - \bar{x}) (2h + (y - \bar{x})) \partial_y 
+ h (h - 1 + y - \bar{x}) \right).
\]

**Proof.** By the standard representation formula for the solutions of the backward parabolic Cauchy problem (5.15), for \( k \geq 1 \) we have

\[
G^k(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{h=1}^{k} \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(t, x; s, \eta) M_{h-1}^{(s, \eta)} G^{k-h}(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds,
\]

(5.51)

where to shorten notation we have set

\[
M_{h-1}^{(t,x)} = L_{h-1}^{(t,x)} - L_h^{(t,x)}.
\]

By (5.48) and since

\[
\tilde{M}_h^{(T, y)} = \tilde{L}_h^{(T, y)} - \tilde{L}_{h-1}^{(T, y)},
\]

the assertion is equivalent to

\[
G^k(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{h=1}^{k} \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(s, \eta; T, y) \tilde{M}_{h-1}^{(s, \eta)} G^{k-h}(t, x; s, \eta) d\eta ds,
\]

(5.52)
5.3. Local Lévy models

where here we have used the representation formula for the solutions of the forward Cauchy problem (5.50) with \( k \geq 1 \).

We proceed by induction and first prove (5.52) for \( k = 1 \). By (5.51) we have

\[
G^1(t, x; T, y) = \int_t^T \int_R G^0(t, x; s, \eta) M_1^{(s, \eta)} G^0(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]

and this proves (5.52) for \( k = 1 \).

Next we assume that (5.52) holds for a generic \( k > 1 \) and we prove the thesis for \( k + 1 \). Again, by (5.51) we have

\[
G^{k+1}(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{j=1}^{k+1} \int_t^T \int_R G^0(t, x; s, \eta) M_j^{(s, \eta)} G^{k+1-j}(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds
\]

(by the inductive hypothesis)
\[ + \sum_{h=1}^{k} \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(\tau, \zeta; T, y) \tilde{M}_h^{(\tau, \zeta)}. \]

\[ \cdot \left( \sum_{j=1}^{k+1-h} \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(t, x; s, \eta) M_j^{(s, \eta)} G^{k+1-h-j}(s, \eta; \tau, \zeta) d\eta ds \right) d\zeta d\tau = \]

(again by (5.51))

\[ = \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(t, \eta; T, y) \tilde{M}_{k+1}^{(s, \eta)} G^0(t, x; s, \eta) d\eta ds \]

\[ + \sum_{h=1}^{k} \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(\tau, \zeta; T, y) \tilde{M}_h^{(\tau, \zeta)} G^{k+1-h}(t, x; \tau, \zeta) d\zeta d\tau \]

\[ = \sum_{h=1}^{k+1} \int_{t}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}} G^0(\tau, \zeta; T, y) \tilde{M}_h^{(\tau, \zeta)} G^{k+1-h}(t, x; \tau, \zeta) d\zeta d\tau. \]

Next we solve problems (5.48)-(5.50) by applying the Fourier transform in the variable \( y \) and using the identity

\[ \mathcal{F}_y \left( \tilde{L}_0^{(T, y)} u(T, y) \right)(\xi) = \psi(\xi) \hat{u}(T, \xi) - \partial_y \hat{u}(T, \xi), \tag{5.53} \]

where

\[ \psi(\xi) = -\frac{\alpha_0}{2}(\xi^2 + i\xi) + i\bar{\alpha}\xi + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( e^{iz\xi} - 1 - iz\xi 1_{\{|z|<1\}} \right) \nu(dz). \tag{5.54} \]

We remark explicitly that \( \psi \) is the characteristic exponent of the Lévy process

\[ dX^0(t) = \left( \bar{\alpha} - \frac{\alpha_0}{2} \right) dt + \sqrt{\alpha_0} dW(t) + dJ(t), \tag{5.55} \]

whose Kolmogorov operator is \( L^0 \) in (5.46). Then:

(i) from (5.48) we obtain the ordinary differential equation

\[
\begin{aligned}
\partial_T \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) &= \psi(\xi) \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi), \quad T > t, \\
\hat{G}^0(t, x; t, \xi) &= e^{i\xi x}.
\end{aligned}
\tag{5.56}
\]

with solution

\[ \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) = e^{i\xi x + (T-t)\psi(\xi)} \tag{5.57} \]

which is the 0\textsuperscript{th} order approximation of the characteristic function \( \varphi_{X^{(T=0)}}(T) \).
(ii) from (5.50) with \( k = 1 \), we have
\[
\begin{align*}
\partial_t \hat{G}^1(t, x; T, \xi) &= \psi(\xi) \hat{G}^1(t, x; T, \xi) \\
+ \alpha_1 \left((i \partial_\xi + \bar{x})(\xi^2 + i \xi) - 2i \xi + 1\right) \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) \\
\hat{G}^1(t, x; t, \xi) &= 0,
\end{align*}
\]
with solution
\[
\hat{G}^1(t, x; T, \xi) = \int_t^T e^{\psi(\xi)(T-s)} \alpha_1 \left((i \partial_\xi + \bar{x})(\xi^2 + i \xi) - 2i \xi + 1\right) \hat{G}^0(t, x; s, \xi) ds =
\]
(by (5.57))
\[
= -e^{ix\xi+\psi(\xi)(T-t)} \alpha_1 \int_t^T (\xi^2 + i \xi) (x - \bar{x} - i(s-t)\psi'(\xi)) ds
\]
\[
= -\hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) \alpha_1 (T-t)(\xi^2 + i \xi) \left(x - \bar{x} - \frac{i}{2}(T-t)\psi'(\xi)\right), \quad (5.58)
\]
which is the first order term in the expansion (5.44).

(iii) regarding (5.50) with \( k = 2 \), a straightforward computation based on analogous arguments shows that the second order term in the expansion (5.44) is given by
\[
\hat{G}^2(t, x; T, \xi) = \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) \sum_{j=0}^2 g_j(T-t, \xi)(x - \bar{x})^j \quad (5.59)
\]
where
\[
g_0(s, \xi) = \frac{1}{2} s^2 \alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \\
- \frac{1}{6} s^3 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \left(\alpha_1^2 (i + 2 \xi) - 2 \alpha_2 \psi''(\xi) + \alpha_1^2 \xi (i + \xi)\right) \\
- \frac{1}{8} s^4 \alpha_1^2 \xi^2 (i + \xi)^2 \psi''(\xi),
\]
\[
g_1(s, \xi) = \frac{1}{2} s^2 \xi (i + \xi) \left(\alpha_1^2 (1 - 2i \xi) + 2i \alpha_2 \psi''(\xi)\right) \\
- \frac{1}{2} s^3 i \alpha_1^2 \xi^2 (i + \xi)^2 \psi''(\xi),
\]
\[
g_2(s, \xi) = -\alpha_2 s \xi (i + \xi) + \frac{1}{2} s^2 \alpha_1^2 \xi^2 (i + \xi)^2.
\]
Plugging (5.57)-(5.58)-(5.59) into (5.44), we finally get the second order approximation of the characteristic function of $X$. In Subsection 5.3.1, we also provide the expression of $\hat{G}^k(t, x; T, \xi)$ for $k = 3, 4$, appearing in the 4th order approximation.

**Remark 5.13.** The basepoint $\bar{x}$ is a parameter which can be freely chosen in order to sharpen the accuracy of the approximation. In general, the simplest choice $\bar{x} = x$ seems to be sufficient to get very accurate results.

**Remark 5.14.** To overcome the use of the adjoint operators, it would be interesting to investigate an alternative approach to the approximation of the characteristic function based of the following remarkable symmetry relation valid for time-homogeneous diffusions

$$m(x)\Gamma(0, x; t, y) = m(y)\Gamma(0, y; t, x)$$  \hspace{1cm} (5.60)

where $m$ is the so-called density of the speed measure

$$m(x) = \frac{2}{\sigma^2(x)} \exp\left(\int_1^x \left(\frac{2r}{\sigma^2(z)} - 1\right) dz\right).$$

Relation (5.60) is stated in [60] and a complete proof can be found in [41].

For completeness, we close this section by stating an integral pricing formula for European options proved by Lewis [68]; the formula is given in terms of the characteristic function of the underlying log-price process. Formula below (and other Fourier-inversion methods such as the standard, fractional FFT algorithm or the recent COS method [44]) can be combined with the expansion (5.44) to price and hedge efficiently hybrid LV models with Lévy jumps.

We consider a risky asset $S(t) = e^{X(t)}$ where $X$ is the process whose risk-neutral dynamics under a martingale measure $Q$ is given by (5.1). We denote by $H(t, S(t))$ the price at time $t < T$, of a European option with underlying asset $S$, maturity $T$ and payoff $f = f(x)$ (given as a function of the log-price): to fix ideas, for a Call option with strike $K$ we have

$$f^\text{Call}(x) = (e^x - K)^+.$$
The following theorem is a classical result which can be found in several textbooks (see, for instance, [85]).

**Theorem 5.15.** Let

\[ f_\gamma(x) = e^{-\gamma x} f(x) \]

and assume that there exists \( \gamma \in \mathbb{R} \) such that

1) \( f_\gamma, \hat{f}_\gamma \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \);

2) \( E^Q[S(T)^\gamma] \) is finite.

Then, the following pricing formula holds:

\[ H(t, S(t)) = \frac{e^{-r(T-t)}}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \hat{f}(\xi + i\gamma) \varphi_{\underline{X}^t, \log S(t)}(\xi + i\gamma) d\xi. \]

For example, \( f^{\text{Call}} \) verifies the assumptions of Theorem 5.15 for any \( \gamma > 1 \) and we have

\[ \hat{f}^{\text{Call}}(\xi + i\gamma) = \frac{K^{1-\gamma} e^{i\xi \log K}}{(i\xi - \gamma)(i\xi - \gamma + 1)}. \]

Other examples of typical payoff functions and the related Greeks can be found in [85].

### 5.3.1 High order approximations

The analysis of Section 5.3 can be carried out to get approximations of arbitrarily high order. Below we give the more accurate (but more complicated) formulae up to the 4th order that we used in the numerical section. In particular we give the expression of \( \hat{G}^k(t, x; T, \xi) \) in (5.44) for \( k = 3, 4 \). For simplicity, we only consider the case of time-homogeneous coefficients and \( \bar{x} = x \).

We have

\[ \hat{G}^3(t, x; T, \xi) = \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) \sum_{j=3}^7 g_j(\xi)(T - t)^j \]
Chapter 5. ADJOINT EXPANSIONS IN LOCAL LÉVY MODELS

where

\[ g_3(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \alpha_3 (1 - i \xi) \xi \psi(3)(\xi), \]

\[ g_4(\xi) = \frac{1}{6} i \xi (i + \xi) \left( 2 \psi'(\xi) \left( \alpha_1 \alpha_2 - 3 \alpha_3 \psi''(\xi) \right) \right. \]
\[ + \left. \frac{\alpha_1 \alpha_2}{2} (3i + 2\xi) \psi''(\xi) + 2\xi (i + \xi) \psi(3)(\xi) \right), \]

\[ g_5(\xi) = \frac{1}{24} (1 - i \xi) \xi \left( -8\alpha_1 \alpha_2 (i + 2\xi) \psi'(\xi)^2 + 6\alpha_3 \psi'(\xi)^3 \right. \]
\[ + \alpha_1 \psi'(\xi) \left( \alpha_1^2 (-1 + 6\xi (i + \xi)) - 16\alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right) \]
\[ + \alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \left( 3i + 2\xi \right) \psi''(\xi) + \xi (i + \xi) \psi(3)(\xi) \right), \]

\[ g_6(\xi) = -\frac{1}{12} i \alpha_1 \xi^2 (i + \xi)^2 \psi'(\xi) \left( \alpha_1^2 (i + 2\xi) \psi'(\xi) \right. \]
\[ - 2\alpha_2 \psi'(\xi)^2 + \alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right), \]

\[ g_7(\xi) = -\frac{1}{48} i \left( \alpha_1 (i + \xi) \psi'(\xi) \right)^3. \]

Moreover, we have

\[ \hat{G}^i(t, x; T, \xi) = \hat{G}^0(t, x; T, \xi) \sum_{j=3}^{9} g_j(\xi) (T - t)^j \]

where

\[ g_3(\xi) = -\frac{1}{2} \alpha_4 \xi (i + \xi) \psi^{(4)}(\xi), \]

\[ g_4(\xi) = \frac{1}{6} \xi (i + \xi) \left( 2 \psi''(\xi) \left( \alpha_2^2 + 3\alpha_1 \alpha_3 - 3\alpha_4 \psi''(\xi) \right) \right. \]
\[ + \left. 2 \left( \left( \alpha_2^2 + 2\alpha_1 \alpha_3 \right) \xi (i + 2\xi) - 4\alpha_4 \psi'(\xi) \right) \psi^{(3)}(\xi) \right), \]

\[ g_5(\xi) = -\frac{1}{24} \xi (i + \xi) \left( \alpha_1^2 \alpha_2 (-7 + 44\xi (i + \xi)) \psi''(\xi) \right. \]
\[ - \left( 7\alpha_2^2 + 15\alpha_1 \alpha_3 \right) \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right)^2 \]
\[ - 2\psi'(\xi)^2 \left( 2\alpha_2^2 + 9\alpha_1 \alpha_3 - 18\alpha_4 \psi''(\xi) \right) \]
\[ + \psi'(\xi) \left( \left( i + 2\xi \right) \left( 8\alpha_2^2 \alpha_2 - \left( 14\alpha_2^2 + 33\alpha_1 \alpha_3 \right) \psi''(\xi) \right) \right) \]
\[ - \left( 10\alpha_2^2 + 21\alpha_1 \alpha_3 \right) \xi (i + \xi) \psi(3)(\xi). \]
5.4. Numerical tests

In this section our approximation formulae (5.44) are tested and compared
with a standard Monte Carlo method. We consider up to the 4th order
expansion (i.e. \( n = 4 \) in (5.44)) even if in most cases the 2nd order seems to
be sufficient to get very accurate results. We analyze the case of a constant
elasticity of variance (CEV) volatility function with Lévy jumps of Gaussian
or Variance-Gamma type. Thus, we consider the log-price dynamics (5.1)
with

\[ \sigma(t, x) = \sigma_0 e^{(\beta-1)x}, \quad \beta \in [0, 1], \quad \sigma_0 > 0, \]

and \( J \) as in Examples 5.1 and 5.2 respectively. In our experiments we assume
the following values for the parameters:

\[
g_6(\xi) = \frac{1}{120} \xi(i + \xi) \left(2 \left( 8\alpha_2^2 + 21\alpha_1 \alpha_3 \right) \left( i + 2\xi \right) \psi'(\xi)^3 - 24\alpha_4 \psi'(\xi)^4 
+ 2 \psi'(\xi)^2 \left( \alpha_1^2 \alpha_2 (11 - 70\xi (i + \xi)) + (26\alpha_2^2 + 57\alpha_1 \alpha_3) \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right) 
+ \alpha_1^2 \psi'(\xi) \left( (i + 2\xi) \left( \alpha_1^2 (-1 + 12\xi (i + \xi)) - 112\alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right) 
- 38\alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi)^2 \right) + \alpha_1^2 \xi (i + \xi) \left( (i + 2\xi + \xi) (6i \left( \psi''(\xi) + \xi (i + \xi) \psi'(\xi) \right) \right) \right) 
- 26\alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi)^2 + \alpha_1^2 \xi (i + \xi) \left( 6(i + 2\xi) \psi''(\xi) + \xi (i + \xi) \psi'(\xi) \right) \right), 
\]

\[
g_7(\xi) = \frac{1}{144} \xi^2 (i + \xi)^2 \left( -32\alpha_1^2 \alpha_2 \left( 2i + 2\xi \right) \psi'(\xi)^3 + 2 \left( 4\alpha_2^2 + 9\alpha_1 \alpha_3 \right) \psi'(\xi)^4 
+ 2\alpha_1^2 \xi^2 (i + \xi)^3 \psi''(\xi)^2 
+ \alpha_1^2 \xi (i + \xi)^2 \left( \alpha_1^2 (-5 + 26\xi (i + \xi)) - 47\alpha_2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right) 
+ \alpha_1^2 \xi (i + \xi) \psi'(\xi) \left( 13(i + 2\xi) \psi''(\xi) + 3\xi (i + \xi) \psi'(\xi) \right) \right), 
\]

\[
g_8(\xi) = \frac{1}{48} \alpha_1^2 \xi^3 (i + \xi)^3 \psi'(\xi)^3 \left( \alpha_1^2 (i + 2\xi) \psi'(\xi) 
- 2\alpha_2 \psi'(\xi)^2 + \alpha_1^4 \xi (i + \xi) \psi''(\xi) \right), 
\]

\[
g_9(\xi) = \frac{1}{384} \alpha_1^4 \xi^4 (i + \xi)^4 \psi'(\xi)^4. 
\]
Chapter 5. ADJOINT EXPANSIONS IN LOCAL LÉVY MODELS

(i) \( S_0 = 1 \) (initial stock price);
(ii) \( r = 5\% \) (risk-free rate)
(iii) \( \sigma_0 = 20\% \) (CEV volatility parameter);
(iv) \( \beta = \frac{1}{2} \) (CEV exponent).

In order to present realistic tests, we allow the range of strikes to vary over the maturities; specifically, we consider extreme values of the strikes where Call prices are of the order of \( 10^{-3} S_0 \), that is we consider deep-out-of-the-money options which are very close to be worthless. To compute the reference values, we use an Euler-Monte Carlo method with 10 millions simulations and 250 time-steps per year.

5.4.1 Tests under CEV-Merton dynamics

In the CEV-Merton model of Example 5.1, we consider the following set of parameters:

(i) \( \lambda = 30\% \) (jump intensity);
(ii) \( m = -10\% \) (average jump size);
(iii) \( \delta = 40\% \) (jump volatility).

In Table 5.1, we give detailed numerical results, in terms of prices and implied volatilities, about the accuracy of our fourth order formula (PPR-4\textsuperscript{th}) compared with the bounds of the Monte Carlo 95%-confidence interval.

Figures 5.1, 5.2 and 5.3 show the performance of the 1\textsuperscript{st}, 2\textsuperscript{nd} and 3\textsuperscript{rd} approximations against the Monte Carlo 95% and 99% confidence intervals, marked in dark and light gray respectively. In particular, Figure 5.1 shows the cross-sections of absolute (left) and relative (right) errors for the price of a Call with short-term maturity \( T = 0.25 \) and strike \( K \) ranging from 0.5 to 1.5. The relative error is defined as

\[
\frac{\text{Call}^{\text{approx}} - \text{Call}^{\text{MC}}}{\text{Call}^{\text{MC}}}
\]
where Call\textsuperscript{approx} and Call\textsuperscript{MC} are the approximated and Monte Carlo prices respectively. In Figure 5.2 we repeat the test for the medium-term maturity $T = 1$ and the strike $K$ ranging from 0.5 to 2.5. Finally in Figure 5.3 we consider the long-term maturity $T = 10$ and the strike $K$ ranging from 0.5 to 4.

Other experiments that are not reported here, show that the 2\textsuperscript{nd} order expansion (5.35), which is valid only in the case of Gaussian jumps, gives the same results as formula (5.44) with $n = 2$, at least if the truncation index $M$ is suitable large, namely $M \geq 8$ under standard parameter regimes. For this reason we have only used formula (5.44) for our tests.

5.4.2 Tests under CEV-Variance-Gamma dynamics

In this subsection we repeat the previous tests in the case of the CEV-Variance-Gamma model. Specifically, we consider the following set of parameters:

(i) $\kappa = 15\%$ (variance of the Gamma subordinator);

(ii) $\theta = -10\%$ (drift of the Brownian motion);

(iii) $\sigma = 20\%$ (volatility of the Brownian motion).

Analogously to Table 5.1, in Table 5.2 we compare our Call price formulas with a high-precision Monte Carlo approximation (with $10^7$ simulations and 250 time-steps per year) for several strikes and maturities. For both the price and the implied volatility, we report our 4\textsuperscript{th} order approximation (PPR 4\textsuperscript{th}) and the boundaries of the Monte Carlo 95%-confidence interval.

Figures 5.4, 5.5 and 5.6 show the cross-sections of absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 2\textsuperscript{nd}, 3\textsuperscript{rd} and 4\textsuperscript{th} approximations against the Monte Carlo 95% and 99% confidence intervals, marked in dark and light gray respectively. Notice that, for longer maturities and deep out-of-the-money options, the lower order approximations give good results in terms of absolute errors but only the 4\textsuperscript{th} order approximation lies inside the confidence
regions. For a more detailed comparison, in Figures 5.5 and 5.6 we plot the 2nd (dotted line), 3rd (dashed line), 4th (solid line) order approximations. Similar results are obtained for a wide range of parameter values.

5.5 Appendix: proof of Theorem 5.3

In this appendix we prove Theorem 5.3 under Assumption \( A_{N+1} \) where \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) is fixed. For simplicity we only consider the case of \( r = 0 \) and time-homogeneous coefficients. Recalling notation (5.11), we put

\[
L_0 = \frac{\alpha_0}{2} (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) + \partial_t \tag{5.61}
\]

and

\[
L_n = L_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k (x - \bar{x})^k (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x), \quad n \leq N. \tag{5.62}
\]

Our idea is to modify and adapt the standard characterization of the fundamental solution given by the parametrix method originally introduced by Levi [67]. The parametrix method is a constructive technique that allows to prove the existence of the fundamental solution \( \Gamma \) of a parabolic operator with variable coefficients of the form

\[
Lu(t, x) = \frac{a(x)}{2} (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) u(t, x) + \partial_t u(t, x).
\]

In the standard parametrix method, for any fixed \( \xi \in \mathbb{R} \), the fundamental solution \( \Gamma_\xi \) of the frozen operator

\[
L_\xi u(t, x) = \frac{a(\xi)}{2} (\partial_{xx} - \partial_x) u(t, x) + \partial_t u(t, x)
\]

is called a parametrix for \( L \). A fundamental solution \( \Gamma(t, x; T, y) \) for \( L \) can be constructed starting from \( \Gamma_y(t, x; T, y) \) by means of an iterative argument and by suitably controlling the errors of the approximation.

Our main idea is to use the \( N^{th} \)-order approximation \( \Gamma^N(t, x; T, y) \) in (5.14)-(5.15) (related to \( L_n \) in (5.61)-(5.62)) as a parametrix. In order to
prove the error bound (5.18), we carefully generalize some Gaussian estimates: in particular, for \( N = 0 \) we are back into the classical framework, but in general we need accurate estimates of the solutions of the nested Cauchy problems (5.15).

By analogy with the classical approach (see, for instance, [50] or the recent and more general presentation in [34]), we have that \( \Gamma \) takes the form

\[
\Gamma(t, x; T, y) = \Gamma^N(t, x; T, y) + \int_t^T \int_\mathbb{R} \Gamma^0(t, x; s, \xi) \Phi^N(s, \xi; T, y) d\xi ds
\]

where \( \Phi^N \) is the function in (5.63) below, which is determined by imposing the condition \( L \Gamma = 0 \). More precisely, we have

\[
0 = L \Gamma(z; \zeta) = L \Gamma^N(z; \zeta) + \int_t^T \int_\mathbb{R} L \Gamma^0(z; w) \Phi^N(w; \zeta) dw - \Phi^N(z; \zeta),
\]

where, to shorten notations, we have set \( z = (t, x) \), \( w = (s, \xi) \) and \( \zeta = (T, y) \).

Equivalently, we have

\[
\Phi^N(z; \zeta) = L \Gamma^N(z; \zeta) + \int_t^T \int_\mathbb{R} L \Gamma^0(z; w) \Phi^N(w; \zeta) dw
\]

and therefore by iteration

\[
\Phi^N(z; \zeta) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} Z_n(z; \zeta) \tag{5.63}
\]

where

\[
Z_0^N(z; \zeta) = L \Gamma^N(z; \zeta),
\]

\[
Z_{n+1}^N(z; \zeta) = \int_t^T \int_\mathbb{R} L \Gamma^0(z; w) Z_n(w; \zeta) dw.
\]

The thesis is a consequence of the following lemmas.

**Lemma 5.16.** For any \( n \leq N \) the solution of (5.15), with \( L_n \) as in (5.61)-(5.62), takes the form

\[
G^n(t, x; T, y) = \sum_{i+j+k \leq n+5, i+j-k \geq n} c_{i,j,k}^n (x - \bar{x})^i (\sqrt{T-t})^j \partial_x^k G^0(t, x; T, y),
\]

where \( c_{i,j,k}^n \) are polynomial functions of \( \alpha_0, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n \).
Proof. We proceed by induction on $n$. For $n = 0$ the thesis is trivial. Next by (5.15) we have $G^{n+1}(t, x; T, y) = I_{n,2} - I_{n,1}$ where

$$I_{n,l} = \sum_{h=1}^{n+1} \alpha_h \int_t^T \int \mathbb{R} G^0(t, x; s, \eta)(\eta - \bar{x})^h \partial^{k+1} G^0(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds, \quad l = 1, 2.$$  

We only analyze the case $l = 2$ since the other one is analogous. By the inductive hypothesis (5.64), we have that $I_{n,2}$ is a linear combination of terms of the form

$$\int_t^T \int \mathbb{R} G^0(t, x; s, \eta)(\sqrt{T-s})^j(\eta - \bar{x})^{h+i} \partial^k \partial_x^j G^0(s, \eta; T, y) d\eta ds \quad (5.65)$$

for $p = 0, 1, 2$ and $h = 1, \ldots, n + 1$; moreover we have

$$i + j - k \geq n + 1 - h, \quad (5.66)$$

$$i \leq n + 1 - h, \quad (5.67)$$

$$j \leq (n + 1 - h)(n + 4 - h) \leq n(n + 3), \quad (5.68)$$

$$k \leq \frac{(n + 1 - h)(n + 6 - h)}{2} \leq \frac{n(n + 5)}{2}. \quad (5.69)$$

Again we focus only on $p = 0$, the other cases being analogous: then by properties (5.24), (5.23) and (5.22), we have that the integral in (5.65) is equal to

$$\int_t^T \int \mathbb{R} V^{h+i} x \partial^k x G^0(t, x; T, y) \quad (5.70)$$

where $V_{t,T,x} = V_{t,T,x,0}$ is the operator in (5.25). Now we remark that $V_{t,s,x}^n$ is a finite sum of the form

$$V_{t,s,x}^n = \sum_{0 \leq j_1, \ldots, j_n, j_1 + j_2 + j_3 \leq n} b^n_{j_1, j_2, j_3} (x - \bar{x})^{j_1} (\sqrt{s-t})^{j_2} \partial_x^{j_3} \quad (5.71)$$

for some constants $b^n_{j_1, j_2, j_3}$. Thus the integral in (5.70) is a linear combination of terms of the form

$$(x - \bar{x})^{j_1} (\sqrt{T-s})^{j_2} \partial_x^{j_3} G^0(t, x; T, y)$$
where

\[ 0 \leq j_1, \frac{j_2}{2}, j_3 \leq h + i, \quad (5.72) \]
\[ j_1 + j_2 - j_3 \geq h + i. \quad (5.73) \]

Eventually we have

\[ j_1 + j + j_2 + 2 - (k + 2 + j_3) \geq \]

(by \(5.73\))

\[ \geq i + j - k + h \geq \]
(by \(5.66\))

\[ \geq n + 1. \]

On the other hand, by \(5.72\) and \(5.67\) we have

\[ j_1 \leq h + i \leq n + 1. \]

Moreover, by \(5.72\), \(5.67\) and \(5.68\) we have

\[ j + 2 + j_2 \leq j + 2 + 2(n + 1) \leq n(n + 3) + 2 + 2(n + 1) = (n + 1)(n + 4). \]

Finally, by \(5.72\), \(5.67\) and \(5.69\) we have

\[ k + 2 + j_3 \leq k + 2 + h + i \leq k + n + 3 \leq \frac{n(n + 5)}{2} + n + 3 = \frac{(n + 1)(n + 6)}{2}. \]

This concludes the proof. \(\square\)

Now we set \(\bar{x} = y\) and prove the thesis only in this case: to treat the case \(\bar{x} = x\), it suffices to proceed in a similar way by using the backward parametrix method introduced in [25].
Lemma 5.17. For any $\epsilon, \tau > 0$ there exists a positive constant $C$, only dependent on $\epsilon, \tau, m, M, N$ and $\max_{k \leq N} \|\alpha_k\|_\infty$, such that
\[
|\partial_{xx} G^n(t, x; T, y)| \leq C(T - t)^{n+\frac{n-2}{2}} \Gamma^M + \epsilon(t, x; T, y),
\]
for any $n \leq N$, $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and $t, T \in \mathbb{R}$ with $0 < T - t \leq \tau$.

Proof. By Lemma 5.16 with $\bar{x} = y$, we have
\[
|\partial_{xx} G^n(t, x; T, y)| \leq \sum_{i \leq n, j \leq n(n+3), k \leq n(n+5)} |c_{i,j,k}^n| \left( \sqrt{T - t} \right)^i \cdot |\partial_{xx} \left( (x - y)^i \partial_x^k G^0(t, x; T, y) \right)|.
\]
Then the thesis follows from the boundedness of the coefficients $\alpha_k$, $k \leq N$, (cf. Assumption $A_N$) and the following standard Gaussian estimates (see, for instance, Lemma A.1 and A.2 in [25]):
\[
\partial_x^k G^0(t, x; T, y) \leq c \left( \sqrt{T - t} \right)^{-k} \Gamma^M + \epsilon(t, x; T, y),
\]
\[
\left( \frac{x - y}{\sqrt{T - t}} \right)^k G^0(t, x; T, y) \leq c \Gamma^M + \epsilon(t, x; T, y),
\]
where $c$ is a positive constant which depends on $k, m, M, \epsilon$ and $\tau$. \hfill \qed

Lemma 5.18. For any $\epsilon, \tau > 0$ there exists a positive constant $C$, only dependent on $\epsilon, \tau, m, M, N$ and $\max_{k \leq N+1} \|\alpha_k\|_\infty$, such that
\[
|Z^n_N(t, x; T, y)| \leq \kappa_n(T - t)^{N+n-1} \Gamma^M + \epsilon(t, x; T, y),
\]
for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and $t, T \in \mathbb{R}$ with $0 < T - t \leq \tau$, where
\[
\kappa_n = C^n \frac{\Gamma_E \left( \frac{1+N}{2} \right)}{\Gamma_E \left( \frac{n+1+N}{2} \right)}
\]
and $\Gamma_E$ denotes the Euler Gamma function.
5.5. Appendix: proof of Theorem 5.3

Proof. On the basis of definitions (5.14) and (5.15), by induction we can prove the following formula:

\[ Z_0^N(z; \zeta) = L\Gamma^N(z; \zeta) = \sum_{n=0}^N (L - L_n)G^{N-n}(z; \zeta). \quad (5.77) \]

Indeed, for \( N = 0 \) we have

\[ L\Gamma^0(z; \zeta) = (L - L_0)G^0(z; \zeta), \]

because \( L_0G^0(z; \zeta) = 0 \) by definition. Then, assuming that (5.77) holds for \( N \in \mathbb{N} \), for \( N + 1 \) we have

\[ L\Gamma^{N+1}(z; \zeta) = L\Gamma^N(z; \zeta) + LG^{N+1}(z; \zeta) = \]

(by inductive hypothesis and (5.15))

\[ = \sum_{n=0}^N (L - L_n)G^{N-n}(z; \zeta) + (L - L_0)G^{N+1}(z; \zeta) \]

\[ - \sum_{n=1}^{N+1} (L_n - L_{n-1})G^{N+1-n}(z; \zeta) \]

\[ = \sum_{n=1}^{N+1} (L - L_{n-1})G^{N-(n-1)}(z; \zeta) + (L - L_0)G^{N+1}(z; \zeta) \]

\[ - \sum_{n=1}^{N+1} (L_n - L_{n-1})G^{N+1-n}(z; \zeta) \]

\[ = (L - L_0)G^{N+1} + \sum_{n=1}^{N+1} (L - L_n)G^{N+1-n}(z; \zeta) \]

from which (5.77) follows.

Then, by (5.77) and Assumption \( A_{N+1} \) we have

\[ |Z_0^N(z; \zeta)| \leq \sum_{n=0}^N \|\alpha_{n+1}\|_{\infty}|x - y|^{n+1} |(\partial_{xx} - \partial_x)G^{N-n}(z; \zeta)| \quad (5.78) \]

and for \( n = 0 \) the thesis follows from estimates (5.74) and (5.75). In the case \( n \geq 1 \), proceeding by induction, the thesis follows from the previous estimates by using the arguments in Lemma 4.3 in [34]: therefore the proof is omitted. \( \square \)
Figure 5.1: Absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 1\textsuperscript{st} (dotted line), 2\textsuperscript{nd} (dashed line), 3\textsuperscript{rd} (solid line) order approximations of a Call price in the CEV-Merton model with maturity $T = 0.25$ and strike $K \in [0.5, 1.5]$. The shaded bands show the 95\% (dark gray) and 99\% (light gray) Monte Carlo confidence regions.

Figure 5.2: Absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 1\textsuperscript{st} (dotted line), 2\textsuperscript{nd} (dashed line), 3\textsuperscript{rd} (solid line) order approximations of a Call price in the CEV-Merton model with maturity $T = 1$ and strike $K \in [0.5, 2.5]$.
Figure 5.3: Absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 1st (dotted line), 2nd (dashed line), 3rd (solid line) order approximations of a Call price in the CEV-Merton model with maturity $T = 10$ and strike $K \in [0.5, 4]$.

Figure 5.4: Absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 1st (dotted line), 2nd (dashed line), 3rd (solid line) order approximations of a Call price in the CEV-Variance-Gamma model with maturity $T = 0.25$ and strike $K \in [0.5, 1.5]$. The shaded bands show the 95% (dark gray) and 99% (light gray) Monte Carlo confidence regions.
Chapter 5. ADJOINT EXPANSIONS IN LOCAL LÉVY MODELS

Figure 5.5: Absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 2\textsuperscript{nd} (dotted line), 3\textsuperscript{rd} (dashed line), 4\textsuperscript{th} (solid line) order approximations of a Call price in the CEV-Variance-Gamma model with maturity $T = 1$ and strike $K \in [0.5, 2.5]$

Figure 5.6: Absolute (left) and relative (right) errors of the 2\textsuperscript{nd} (dotted line), 3\textsuperscript{rd} (dashed line), 4\textsuperscript{th} (solid line) order approximations of a Call price in the CEV-Variance-Gamma model with maturity $T = 10$ and strike $K \in [0.5, 5]$
Table 5.1: Call prices and implied volatilities in the CEV-Merton model for the fourth order formula (PPR-4\textsuperscript{th}) and the Monte Carlo (MC-95\%) with 10 millions simulations using Euler scheme with 250 time steps per year, expressed as a function of strikes at the expiry $T = 3\text{M, 1Y, 10Y}$. Parameters: $S_0 = 1$ (initial stock price), $r = 5\%$ (risk-free rate), $\sigma_0 = 20\%$ (CEV volatility parameter), $\beta = \frac{1}{2}$ (CEV exponent), $\lambda = 30\%$ (jump intensity), $m = -10\%$ (average jump size), $\delta = 40\%$ (jump volatility).
Table 5.2: Call prices and implied volatilities in the CEV-Variance-Gamma model for the fourth order formula (PPR-4\textsuperscript{th}) and the Monte Carlo (MC-95\%) with 10 millions simulations using Euler scheme with 250 time steps per year, expressed as a function of strikes at the expiry $T = 3\text{M}, 1\text{Y}, 10\text{Y}$. Parameters: $S_0 = 1$ (initial stock price), $r = 5\%$ (risk-free rate), $\sigma_0 = 20\%$ (CEV volatility parameter), $\beta = \frac{1}{2}$ (CEV exponent), $\kappa = 15\%$ (variance of the Gamma subordinator), $\theta = -10\%$ (drift of the Brownian motion), $\sigma = 20\%$ (volatility of the Brownian motion). 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$T$</th>
<th>$K$</th>
<th>Call prices</th>
<th>Implied volatility (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PPR 4\textsuperscript{th}</td>
<td>MC 95% c.i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.23708</td>
<td>0.23704 – 0.23722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.15489</td>
<td>0.15482 – 0.15497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.08413</td>
<td>0.08403 – 0.08415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.03436</td>
<td>0.03426 – 0.03433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.00968</td>
<td>0.00961 – 0.00965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.54643</td>
<td>0.54630 – 0.54679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35456</td>
<td>0.35438 – 0.35479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.20071</td>
<td>0.20049 – 0.20082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.03394</td>
<td>0.03374 – 0.03387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.00188</td>
<td>0.00185 – 0.00188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.80150</td>
<td>0.80279 – 0.80502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.66691</td>
<td>0.66775 – 0.66990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.22948</td>
<td>0.22836 – 0.22986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>0.13680</td>
<td>0.13497 – 0.13618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.08664</td>
<td>0.08418 – 0.08518</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bibliography


[39] Ibrahim Ekren, Christian Keller, Nizar Touzi, and Jianfeng Zhang. Viscosity solutions of fully nonlinear parabolic path de-


0304-4149. doi: 10.1016/0304-4149(81)90026-0. URL http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0304-4149(81)90026-0


[108] Walter Willinger and Murad S. Taqqu. Pathwise stochastic integration and applications to the theory of continuous trad-


